GRUPO BLR

READING MAKES PERFECT SHORT SUMMARIES

FOR PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS CEFR A2

ISBN: 978-9907-802-87-0

Jorge Fernando Checa Medina
Javier Bermeo Pacheco
Manuel López Feijoo

2026

READING MAKES PERFECT SHORT SUMMARIES FOR PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS CEFR A2

Jorge Fernando Checa Medina

Javier Bermeo Pacheco

Manuel López Feijoo

AUTORES

UTMACH

Este libro ha sido debidamente examinado y valorado en la modalidad doble par ciego con fin de garantizar la calidad científica.

©Grupo Editorial BLR
Universidad Técnica de Machala
Riobamba – Ecuador
Correo: publicaciones@grupoblr.com
https://grupoblr.com/libros-investigo
REPOSITORIO



Checa, J., Bermeo., J., López, M. (2026) Reading Makes Perfect Short Summaries for pre-intermediate learners CEFR A2. Grupo Editorial BLR.

© Jorge Fernando Checa Medina
Javier Bermeo Pacheco
Manuel López Feijoo

Reading Makes Perfect Short Summaries for pre-intermediate learners CEFR A2

ISBN: 978-9907-802-87-0

El copyright promueve la libertad de expresión, protege la diversidad de ideas y conocimiento, además apoya la libre expresión. Se prohíbe de manera rigurosa la producción o el almacenamiento de esta publicación, ya sea en su totalidad o en parte, está estrictamente prohibido por ley, incluyendo el diseño de la portada, así como su difusión a través de cualquiera de sus medios, ya sean electrónicos, mecánicos, ópticos, de grabación o incluso de fotocopia, sin permiso de los propietarios de los derechos de autor.

Filiación de autores

Jorge Fernando Checa Medina

Universidad Técnica de Machala

Correo Electrónico:jcheca@utmachala.edu.ec

ORCID: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4304-353X

Javier Bermeo Pacheco

Universidad Técnica de Machala

Correo Electrónico:jbermeo@utmachala.edu.ec

ORCID: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4606-3464

Manuel López Feijoo

Universidad Técnica de Machala

Correo Electrónico: malopez@utmachala.edu.ec

ORCID: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-3898-3343

INTRODUCTION

Learning to read in a new language is one of the most rewarding steps you can take, and the right stories can make it far easier. That is the idea behind this book, Reading Makes Perfect: Short Summaries for Pre-Intermediate Learners. It is written for teenagers and adults who already know the basics of English and are ready to take the next step, and its goal is simple: to help you read with confidence and enjoy it along the way.

Inside you will find 30 short summaries of well-loved stories from around the world, ranging from timeless classics to more recent favorites. Each one is our own retelling, written in clear, simplified English so that a pre-intermediate reader can follow it from the first line to the last.

Every summary has been adapted to the A2 (Pre-Intermediate) level of the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEFR), taking the Council of Europe's A2 descriptors as the target profile. To keep each text at this level, we applied a consistent set of controls to grammar, sentence length, and vocabulary.

The grammar stays within the A2 range described in the CEFR and in reference resources such as the English Grammar Profile. Because these are retellings of stories, each summary is told mainly in the past simple, supported by the present simple, the past continuous, and the future with will and be going to. Comparatives and superlatives, common modal verbs such as can, could, must, have to, and should,

and a wider set of connectors such as and, but, so, because, when, before, and after give the language variety, while the present perfect appears in a limited way with time words such as ever, never, for, and since. Structures above A2, such as the past perfect, the present perfect continuous, the passive, reported speech, and the more advanced second and third conditionals, are set aside so that the language never drifts into B1. Sentences are kept short and usually carry one main idea, sometimes joined by a linking word; across the collection they average around eight words, though a few now run a little longer, up to about sixteen, to allow for past-tense storytelling. Vocabulary is drawn from high-frequency, everyday words, guided by recognized word lists such as the Oxford 3000 and the English Vocabulary Profile. Less common words are introduced sparingly, repeated when they appear, and made clear by the surrounding sentences, so that even an unfamiliar term can be understood from its context. Proper names and a small number of unavoidable content words are handled the same way.

Finally, each story comes with a set of reading comprehension questions so you can check what you have understood. At the back of the book, you will find a grammar reference that reviews verb tenses and other key structures, with exercises to practice each point, and a complete answer key for everything.

We hope these stories make your reading a real pleasure.

Happy reading!

INDEX

INTRODUCTION…….i

INDEX……..iii

STORY 1: MOBY-DICK…….8

Reading comprehension 10

STORY 2: PRIDE AND PREJUDICE…….14

Reading comprehension 16

STORY 3: JANE EYRE…….21

Reading comprehension 24

STORY 4: ALICE'S ADVENTURES IN WONDERLAND……..28

Reading comprehension 30

STORY 5: FRANKENSTEIN……..35

Reading comprehension……..38

STORY 6: THE COUNT OF MONTE CRISTO……42

Reading comprehension……..44

STORY 7: DRACULA……...49

Reading comprehension 51

STORY 8: THE PICTURE OF DORIAN GRAY……55

Reading comprehension 57

STORY 9: PERSUASION…….62

Reading comprehension 64

STORY 10: THE ODYSSEY…….69

Reading comprehension……...72

STORY 11: WAR AND PEACE……77

Reading comprehension……...80

STORY 12: GREAT EXPECTATIONS……...84

Reading comprehension……...86

STORY 13: LES MISÉRABLES……..91

Reading comprehension 93

STORY 14: THE GREAT GATSBY…….98

Reading comprehension 100

STORY 15: 1984……...105

Reading comprehension 107

STORY 16: TO KILL A MOCKINGBIRD……112

Reading comprehension…….114

STORY 17: THE CATCHER IN THE RYE……..119

Reading comprehension 121

STORY 18: SENSE AND SENSIBILITY……..125

Reading comprehension 127

STORY 19: LITTLE WOMEN……...132

Reading comprehension 134

STORY 20: THE SCARLET LETTER……..139

Reading comprehension 141

STORY 21: MY FAMILY AND OTHER ANIMALS……146

Reading comprehension 148

STORY 22: THE LATHE OF HEAVEN……153

Reading comprehension 156

STORY 23: TO SAY NOTHING OF THE DOG……..160

Reading comprehension 164

STORY 24: ALL THE BIRDS IN THE SKY…….168

Reading comprehension 171

STORY 25: HOWL'S MOVING CASTLE……175

Reading comprehension 178

STORY 26: THE FIFTH SACRED THING……..182

Reading comprehension 185

STORY 27: SORCERER TO THE CROWN……189

Reading comprehension 192

STORY 28: A PSALM FOR THE WILD-BUILT…….196

Reading comprehension 199

STORY 29: THE DISPOSSESSED……204

Reading comprehension 207

STORY 30: THE WORK OF ART…….212

Reading comprehension 216

READING ANSWER KEY…….221

GRAMMAR REFERENCE……232

Section 1: Verbs and Tenses 232

Section 2: building blocks……..330

GRAMMAR REFERENCE ANSWER KEY……364

Section 2 410

REFERENCES…….427

STORY 1: MOBY-DICK

by Herman Melville

Ishmael was a young man who was not happy with his life. He wanted to see the world, so he decided to become a sailor. He walked to New Bedford, which was a famous town for sailors. It was colder than other nights. Ishmael went into a small inn to rest.

In the inn, Ishmael met a tall and strong man named Queequeg. Queequeg was a harpooner who had lots of tattoos on his skin. At first, Ishmael was afraid. He thought, 'I have never seen anyone like him before!' But soon, they became good friends. Queequeg also wanted to find a ship, so they decided to go together.

The next day, they went to Nantucket. They found a ship called the Pequod. Captain Ahab was the captain of the ship. He was a very serious man. He had a wooden leg. While he was hunting in the ocean one day, a big white whale took his real leg.

Captain Ahab spoke to the men. He said, “We are going to hunt whales. But I want to find a special whale named Moby-Dick. I have looked for him since I lost my leg. I will catch him!”

The sailors were afraid, but they agreed to help because they needed money. Ishmael and Queequeg joined the crew, and the Pequod sailed into the sea.

The ship sailed for many weeks. The sailors worked hard. One day, while they were cleaning the ship, they saw a group of whales! They

got into small boats to catch them. It was a dangerous job, but they worked together.

Captain Ahab was alone most of the time. He was angrier than the other men. He looked at the ocean and asked, 'Have you ever seen a white whale? We must find Moby-Dick. Be ready.'

Later, while the Pequod was sailing south, a great storm hit the ship. The sky was dark, and the wind was strong. Captain Ahab shouted, “Do not be afraid! This storm will take us to Moby-Dick!” Queequeg and Ishmael helped each other to keep the ship safe.

After the storm, the sea was calm. One morning, a sailor saw a huge white whale in the ocean. It was Moby-Dick! His white body shone in the sun.

Captain Ahab gave the order to chase the whale. The sailors got into the small boats that were on the ship. They threw their harpoons at Moby-Dick. While the men were fighting, the whale hit the boats with his tail. Some sailors fell into the water, but they climbed back in.

Captain Ahab didn't stop. He shouted, “I will catch you!” The whale dived into the sea. When Moby-Dick came back to the surface, he swam at Captain Ahab’s boat. The whale hit the boat, and the men fell into the water.

The sailors chased Moby-Dick for three days. The men cried, 'We have never been so tired!' Captain Ahab pushed them to keep going. On the third day, Moby-Dick attacked again. He hit the Pequod, and the ship began to sink.

The sailors tried to save themselves. The Pequod sank, and Captain Ahab died. Moby-Dick escaped. Only Ishmael survived. While he was floating on a piece of wood, another ship found him and took him to land. Ishmael never forgot the great white whale that destroyed his ship.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Ishmael decided to become a sailor because he wanted to see the world. _____

b) Queequeg was a serious captain with a wooden leg. _____

c) The sailors agreed to hunt Moby-Dick because they needed money. _____

d) Captain Ahab was happy and friendly most of the time. _____

e) Only Ishmael survived when the ship sank at the end of the story. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Who did Ishmael meet in the small inn in New Bedford?

a) A tall and strong harpooner named Queequeg

b) A serious captain with a wooden leg

c) A young sailor who wanted to find a ship

3. What was the name of Captain Ahab's ship?

a) Moby-Dick

b) Nantucket

c) The Pequod

4. Why did Captain Ahab want to catch the special white whale?

a) Because the whale took his real leg.

b) Because the whale had lots of tattoos.

c) Because the whale destroyed his first boat.

5. What happened while the Pequod was sailing south?

a) The sailors found a big chest of gold.

b) A great storm hit the ship.

c) Captain Ahab decided to go back home.

6. How many days did the sailors chase Moby-Dick?

a) Five days

b) Three days

c) One week

7. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Ishmael went into a small _____ to rest because it was colder than usual.

b) Queequeg was a harpooner who had lots of _____ on his skin.

c) Captain Ahab had a _____ leg because a big white whale took his real leg.

d) The ship sailed for many weeks, and the sailors worked _____.

e) Ishmael was floating on a piece of _____ when another ship found him.

8. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Ishmael was a very happy young man who wanted to stay in his hometown forever. He met a friendly man named Captain Ahab, and they decided to open a small inn together. One day, a tiny fish with tattoos swam into their town and they caught it easily. They bought a beautiful new ship called the Pequod to sail around the world for a nice vacation. The weather was always sunny, and they never saw a storm on the ocean. At the end of the

story, everyone was safe, and they became the richest sailors in the world.

b) Captain Ahab was a young boy who loved to swim in the ocean with his best friend, Ishmael. They had a small wooden boat and liked to catch green frogs near the river. One day, they found a friendly white whale named Moby-Dick who liked to play games with them. The whale gave them a chest full of money, so they never had to work hard again. They went to Nantucket to buy a big house with their new friend Queequeg. They lived happily on land and never sailed on a dangerous ship again.

c) Ishmael wanted to see the world, so he became a sailor and met a strong harpooner named Queequeg. They joined a ship called the Pequod to work on the ocean. The captain of the ship was Ahab, a serious man with a wooden leg. Captain Ahab wanted to catch a giant white whale named Moby-Dick because the whale took his real leg. The sailors chased the whale for three days after a great storm hit the ship. Finally, the white whale attacked them, the ship sank, and only Ishmael survived to tell the story.

STORY 2: PRIDE AND PREJUDICE

by Jane Austen

Elizabeth Bennet was a young woman. She lived with her family in a small house. She had four sisters. Her father was a quiet man who liked to read books. Her mother, Mrs. Bennet, wanted her daughters to marry rich men. She thought it was the most important thing in the world.

One day, a rich man named Mr. Bingley moved into a big house nearby. Mrs. Bennet was more excited than her husband. She said, “One of you must marry Mr. Bingley!”

The Bennet family went to a party. They met Mr. Bingley. He was friendly and kind, and everyone liked him. Mr. Bingley brought his friend Mr. Darcy. Mr. Darcy was tall and handsome, but he was the quietest man at the party. People thought he was proud and rude.

Elizabeth didn't like Mr. Darcy. She thought he was too serious. Mr. Darcy thought Elizabeth was pretty, but he didn’t talk to her. While Elizabeth was talking to her friends, he watched her from a distance.

Mr. Bingley talked to Jane. She was Elizabeth’s oldest sister. He liked Jane very much, and Jane liked him too. Mrs. Bennet was happy. She said, “Jane is going to marry Mr. Bingley!”

Elizabeth spent time with her friend Charlotte. They talked about life and marriage. Charlotte said, “A woman has to marry well to have a

good life.” Elizabeth said, “I want to marry a man that I love. I don't want to marry for money.”

Mr. Collins came to visit the family. He was a priest. He worked for a rich woman who lived far away. He wanted to marry one of the Bennet sisters. At first, he wanted to marry Jane. Mrs. Bennet said, “Jane is going to marry Mr. Bingley.” So, Mr. Collins asked Elizabeth. He said, “Elizabeth, marry me. You will have a safe and happy life.”

Elizabeth was shocked. She said, “No, I will not marry you.” Mr. Collins was surprised. He said, “No one has ever said no to me before!” Soon after, Mr. Collins asked Charlotte to marry him. Charlotte said yes. She said, “I need a good home. I will be happy enough.”

While Jane was waiting for Mr. Bingley to propose, he suddenly left. He went back to the city without saying goodbye. Jane was very sad. Elizabeth was angry. She thought, "Mr. Darcy sent Mr. Bingley away because we are not rich."

Later, Elizabeth met Mr. Darcy again. Mr. Darcy looked at her and said, “I love you. I want to marry you.” Elizabeth was still angry. She said, “No, I will not marry you. You are proud, and you separated my sister from Mr. Bingley.”

Mr. Darcy wrote a letter to Elizabeth. The letter explained everything. It read, “I did not know about Jane's love for Mr. Bingley. Because of this, I asked my friend to leave.” The letter also explained things about Elizabeth’s youngest sister, Lydia. While Lydia was staying in another

town, she ran away with a bad man. Mr. Darcy helped them get married.

Elizabeth read the letter. She realized her mistake. She saw his true kindness. Elizabeth visited Mr. Darcy’s home, Pemberley. The house was beautiful. The workers said good things about Mr. Darcy. They called him a good master who treated them well. Mr. Darcy came home. He was polite and kind. Elizabeth saw a different side of him.

Soon, Elizabeth heard good news. Mr. Bingley returned. He asked Jane to marry him, and Jane said yes. Mrs. Bennet was overjoyed. She said, “I have always known about this marriage!”

Mr. Darcy visited the Bennet family. He asked Elizabeth to marry him again. This time, Elizabeth said yes. In the end, there were two happy marriages. Jane married Mr. Bingley, and Elizabeth married Mr. Darcy.

Elizabeth and Mr. Darcy moved to Pemberley. Elizabeth learned a new lesson. Mr. Darcy was not proud, but shy. Mr. Darcy learned about Elizabeth's strong and clever mind. They loved each other more every day. Jane and Mr. Bingley lived nearby. They often visited Elizabeth and Mr. Darcy. The Bennet family’s story was full of love, friendship, and understanding.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Elizabeth Bennet lived with her family in a big house. _____

b) Mrs. Bennet wanted her daughters to marry rich men. _____

c) While Elizabeth was talking to her friends, Mr. Darcy watched her from a distance. _____

d) Elizabeth said yes when Mr. Collins asked her to marry him. _____

e) At the end of the story, Jane married Mr. Darcy and Elizabeth married Mr. Bingley. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Who was the quietest man at the party?

a) Mr. Collins

b) Mr. Darcy

c) Mr. Bingley

2. What did Elizabeth say to Charlotte about marriage?

a) "I want to marry a man that I love."

b) "A woman has to marry well to have a good life."

c) "I am going to marry Mr. Collins for his money."

3. Why did Mr. Bingley suddenly go back to the city?

a) Because he wanted to visit Pemberley.

b) Because he ran away with Lydia.

c) Because Mr. Darcy asked him to leave.

4. What did Mr. Darcy's letter explain?

a) That he was the richest man in the world.

b) Things about Jane and Elizabeth's youngest sister, Lydia.

c) That he wanted to buy the Bennet family's house.

5. What did Elizabeth learn about Mr. Darcy at the end of the story?

a) He was not proud, but shy.

b) He was the most dangerous man in town.

c) He was poorer than her father.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

1. Mrs. Bennet wanted her daughters to marry _____ men.

2. Mr. Darcy was tall and handsome, but he was the _____ man at the party.

3. While Jane was _____ for Mr. Bingley to propose, he suddenly left.

4. Mr. Darcy wrote a _____ to Elizabeth to explain everything.

5. Elizabeth learned a new _____ about Mr. Darcy at the end.

4). Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Elizabeth Bennet lived with her four sisters and her parents. Her father wanted her to marry a poor man, but her mother wanted her to find a good job in the city. One day, a man named Mr. Collins bought a big house nearby and invited the family to a party. Elizabeth fell in love with Mr. Collins because he was the most handsome man there. However, her sister Jane ran away with him instead. In the end, Elizabeth moved to Pemberley alone and never married anyone, but she was very happy to read books like her father.

b) Elizabeth Bennet lived in a small house with her parents and four sisters. Her mother wanted her daughters to marry rich men. When a rich man named Mr. Bingley arrived, he liked Elizabeth's sister, Jane. Mr. Bingley's friend, Mr. Darcy, seemed proud and serious, so Elizabeth did not like him. Later, Mr. Darcy asked Elizabeth to marry him, but she said no. After he wrote a letter explaining his actions, Elizabeth realized he was actually a kind and shy man. Finally, Jane married Mr. Bingley, and Elizabeth married Mr. Darcy.

c) Mr. Darcy was a poor priest who wanted to marry one of the Bennet sisters. First, he asked Jane, but she was going to marry a

rich man named Mr. Collins. Then, Mr. Darcy asked Elizabeth, but she said no because she was angrier than her sisters. While Elizabeth was visiting a big city, she met Mr. Bingley, who was the quietest man in town. Mr. Bingley wrote a long letter to Mrs. Bennet to ask for some money. At the end of the story, Elizabeth and Charlotte moved to a new country and never saw their families again.

STORY 3: JANE EYRE

by Charlotte Brontë

Jane Eyre was a young girl. She lived with her aunt. Her parents died when she was a baby. She lived at Gateshead Hall. Her aunt, Mrs. Reed, was a cruel woman. Mrs. Reed and her children were unkind to Jane. They often told her, “You are useless! You’re not important!” They treated her badly. Jane felt very lonely.

One day, her cousin John hit Jane. Jane fought back. Mrs. Reed was angrier than before. She locked Jane in a dark room. People called it the Red Room. Jane was very scared. It was the room where her uncle died. She cried and said, "Please let me out!" No one listened. That night, Jane thought, “I will leave Gateshead Hall.”

Soon, Mrs. Reed sent Jane to Lowood School. It was a school for orphaned girls. Jane hoped for a better life. But Lowood was very hard. The girls had to wake up early and study all day. The school was colder than her old home. Mr. Brocklehurst ran the school. He was a very strict man. He said, “Punish Jane! She is a bad girl.”

Jane made a good friend at Lowood. Her name was Helen. Helen was kind and patient. Jane loved Helen very much. But Helen became sick and died. Jane was very sad. She promised, "I will be brave."

Years passed, and Jane grew up. She became a teacher at Lowood. But Jane wanted to see the world. She decided to find a job as a governess. A governess is a teacher who lives with a family. Soon, she got a job at Thornfield Hall.

At Thornfield Hall, Jane met Mrs. Fairfax. She was the housekeeper. Jane also met her student. Her name was Adele. Jane enjoyed teaching her.

One day, while Jane was walking outside, she saw a man on a horse. The horse slipped, and the man fell. Jane ran to help him. The man said, "Thank you," and rode away. Later, Jane discovered the truth. The man was Mr. Rochester. He was the owner of Thornfield Hall.

Jane thought, "I have never met a man like Mr. Rochester!" He was serious, but he was also clever. They became friends. Jane began to admire him.

Strange things began to happen. One night, while Jane was sleeping, she heard a loud laugh. She went to Mr. Rochester's room and saw smoke. His bed was on fire! Jane threw water on the fire and saved him. Mr. Rochester said, "Thank you, Jane." He didn't explain the fire.

Another day, a man named Mr. Mason visited. That night, Jane heard screams. She ran to help and found Mr. Mason hurt. Mr. Rochester said, "Jane, keep quiet about this." Jane trusted him.

Later, Mr. Rochester had a big party. A rich woman named Miss Ingram came. Jane thought, "Mr. Rochester likes Miss Ingram. He will never love me." Jane felt very sad.

But one evening, Mr. Rochester surprised Jane. He said, "I don't love Miss Ingram. I love you. Will you marry me?" Jane was shocked but very happy. She said yes.

Jane and Mr. Rochester planned their wedding. But on the day of the wedding, a terrible secret came out. A man came to the church and said, “Mr. Rochester cannot marry Jane. He is already married!” Jane was shocked. Mr. Rochester said, “It is true.” He had a wife with a serious mental illness. Her name was Bertha. She lived in a hidden room at Thornfield Hall. She was the woman that started the fire.

Jane felt heartbroken. She left Thornfield Hall that night. She walked for many miles without money. Finally, a kind family helped her. They were the Rivers family. Jane lived with them and became a teacher again. Later, Jane discovered a secret. The Rivers were her cousins! She also got a lot of money from her dead uncle. She shared the money with her cousins.

One cousin, St. John, was a priest. He said, “Jane, marry me. Go with me to India.” Jane didn’t love him, so she said no. She wanted to marry for love.

One night, Jane felt a strange pull in her heart. She thought, "Mr. Rochester is calling my name!" She decided to go back to Thornfield Hall.

When Jane returned, the house was destroyed. People in town said, “Bertha set the house on fire!” Bertha died in the fire. While he was trying to save the servants, Mr. Rochester lost his sight.

Jane found Mr. Rochester in a small house. When he heard Jane, he was very happy. Jane said, “I still love you.” Mr. Rochester was extremely happy. They got married.

They lived a quiet and happy life together. Mr. Rochester slowly regained some of his sight. He was able to see their first child. Jane was not lonely anymore. She finally had love, family, and a good home.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Jane lived with her cruel aunt, Mrs. Reed, at Gateshead Hall. _____

b) Mr. Brocklehurst was a very kind man who loved Jane at Lowood School. _____

c) Jane became a governess and met Mr. Rochester at Thornfield Hall. _____

d) Jane married Mr. Rochester on the day of their first wedding. _____

e) At the end of the story, Mr. Rochester lost his sight but slowly regained some of it. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Why did Mrs. Reed lock Jane in the dark Red Room?

a) Because Jane fought back when her cousin John hit her.

b) Because Jane wanted to be a governess at Thornfield Hall.

c) Because Jane set Mr. Rochester's bed on fire.

2. Who was Helen at Lowood School?

a) A strict teacher who punished Jane.

b) A kind and patient friend that Jane loved.

c) The housekeeper at Thornfield Hall.

3. What happened while Jane was walking outside one day?

a) She found a lot of money from her dead uncle.

b) She met her cousin St. John, the priest.

c) She saw a man on a horse slip and fall.

4. What was the terrible secret on the day of the wedding?

a) Mr. Rochester was already married to a woman named Bertha.

b) Mr. Rochester did not have any money for the party.

c) Jane was secretly married to St. John.

5. What did Jane do when she discovered she had cousins and got a lot of money?

a) She shared the money with her cousins.

b) She bought a big house in India.

c) She gave all the money to Mrs. Reed.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Mrs. Reed was a _____ woman.

b) Jane decided to find a job as a _____.

c) One night, while Jane was sleeping, she heard a loud _____.

d) He had a wife with a _____ illness.

e) While he was trying to save the servants, Mr. Rochester lost his _____.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Jane Eyre was a rich girl who lived with her kind aunt at Gateshead Hall. She went to Lowood School and became the best student because the teachers loved her very much. One day, she bought Thornfield Hall and met a poor man named Mr. Rochester. They wanted to get married, but Jane's cousin John arrived and stopped the wedding. Jane moved to India with a priest to start a new school for young girls. Mr. Rochester stayed in England, and they never saw each other again.

b) Jane Eyre was an orphaned girl who lived with her cruel aunt and later went to a strict school called Lowood. When she grew up, she became a governess at Thornfield Hall and fell in love with

Mr. Rochester. They planned to marry, but Jane discovered he already had a mad wife named Bertha. Jane ran away, found her cousins, and got some money. Later, she felt a pull in her heart and returned to Mr. Rochester. His house was burned, and he was blind, but they married and lived happily.

c) Jane Eyre was a bad girl who always fought with her family and friends. Her aunt sent her to a beautiful castle where she learned to ride horses with a man named Mr. Mason. One night, Jane started a fire in the castle because she was very angry with the housekeeper. She ran away to the city and found a job as a nurse for a sick woman named Miss Ingram. At the end of the story, Jane found a lot of money, bought a big ship, and traveled around the world alone.

STORY 4: ALICE'S ADVENTURES IN WONDERLAND

by Lewis Carroll

Alice was a clever young girl. One sunny day, while she was sitting by the river, she felt bored. Suddenly, she saw a white rabbit. The rabbit wore a coat and looked at a watch. He said, "Oh dear! I am late!" Alice thought, "I have never seen a rabbit with a watch!" She decided to follow him.

The rabbit ran into a dark hole. Alice followed him and fell down for a long time. Finally, she landed in a strange place. People called it Wonderland.

Alice saw a tiny door. She wanted to go through it, but she was too big. Then, she found a small bottle. The label said, "Drink Me." She drank the liquid. Suddenly, she became smaller than the door! Now she could go through it.

In Wonderland, Alice met many magical animals. First, she saw a mouse in a pool of water. While the mouse was swimming, Alice talked to him. The animals were very wet. They had a race to dry off. It was a funny race because everyone won.

Next, Alice met the White Rabbit again. He thought, "This girl is my helper." He said, "Bring me my gloves!" Alice went to his house. While she was waiting there, she found another bottle. She drank it and became very big! She was bigger than the house. The animals outside were scared. They threw small stones at her. The stones turned into cakes. Alice ate one, and she became small again.

Alice continued her journey. She met a caterpillar. He was sitting on a big mushroom. He asked, “Who are you?” Alice said, “I do not know!” The caterpillar said, “One side of the mushroom will make you taller. The other side will make you smaller.” Alice took some pieces of the mushroom. She put the pieces in a pocket that was on her dress.

Later, Alice visited a house. Inside, she saw a Duchess and a crying baby. She also saw a cook. The cook was throwing pots and pans. The Duchess was angrier than the cook. Alice picked up the baby. She wanted to help it. But suddenly, the baby turned into a pig! She let the pig go.

Alice walked away and saw a big cat in a tree. It was the Cheshire Cat. It had a very big smile. Alice asked, “Where should I go?” The cat said, “It does not matter.” Then he said, “Visit the Mad Hatter.”

Alice went to the Mad Hatter’s tea party. It was very strange. The table was full of cups, but there was no food. The Mad Hatter and his friends were sitting at the table. They asked strange questions. One friend said, “Have some tea!” But the cup was empty. Alice thought, “This is the silliest party in the world!” She left the table.

Alice walked into a beautiful garden. She saw talking flowers! The flowers said, “You must meet the Queen of Hearts.” Alice went to the castle. There, she saw soldiers. They looked like playing cards. The Queen of Hearts was loud and angry. She shouted, “Off with their heads!”

The Queen said, “Play a game with me!” The game was very strange. The balls were small animals. The sticks were large birds. Everyone broke the rules. The Queen became very angry, but Alice stayed calm.

Later, Alice watched a trial in the castle. The Queen said, “That man stole my cakes! Off with his head!” The trial was very strange. The Queen looked at Alice and asked, “What do you think?” Alice said, “This is crazy!” The Queen shouted, “Off with her head!”

Alice was not scared. She ate a piece of mushroom and grew taller. She became the tallest person in the room. She said, “You are just a pack of cards!”

Suddenly, the cards flew up into the air. They fell on Alice. Then, she woke up. She was sitting by the river. It was all a dream! She looked at her sister and said, “I had a wonderful dream!” Alice smiled and thought about her strange adventure.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Alice decided to follow a white rabbit because he wore a coat and looked at a watch. _____

b) Alice became smaller than the door after she ate a big piece of a mushroom. _____

c) The Cheshire Cat told Alice to visit the Queen of Hearts first. _____

d) While Alice was waiting at the rabbit's house, she drank from another bottle and became very big. _____

e) At the end of the dream, Alice was the tallest person in the room and said they were just a pack of cards. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What was Alice doing when she saw the white rabbit?

a) She was running in a dark hole.

b) She was sitting by the river.

c) She was playing a strange game.

2. What happened to the baby when Alice tried to help it in the house?

a) It turned into a pig!

b) It drank a magical bottle.

c) It became bigger than the house.

3. Why did Alice leave the Mad Hatter's tea party?

a) Because the Queen of Hearts was very angry.

Because she wanted to find her sister by the river.

b) Because she thought it was the silliest party in the world.

4. Who was the loudest and angriest person in the beautiful garden?

a) The Queen of Hearts

b) The Duchess

c) The Cheshire Cat

5. How did Alice wake up from her strange dream?

a) A mouse swam in a pool of water and splashed her.

b) A pack of cards flew up into the air and fell on her.

c) A caterpillar gave her a big mushroom to eat.

3 Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Alice found a small bottle with a label that said, "_____ Me."

b) The caterpillar was sitting on a big _____ and asked Alice who she was.

c) Alice saw the Cheshire Cat in a tree, and it had a very big _____.

d) The Queen of Hearts looked at Alice during the _____ and asked what she thought.

e) Alice woke up and told her sister that she had a wonderful _____.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Alice was a young girl who followed a white rabbit down a dark hole into Wonderland. In this strange place, she drank magical liquids and ate a mushroom to become bigger and smaller. While she was traveling, she met many unusual animals, like a caterpillar and a smiling Cheshire cat. She also visited a very silly tea party and met the loud and angry Queen of Hearts. The Queen wanted to cut off people's heads during a crazy trial. Suddenly, Alice grew very tall, and the playing cards flew at her. Then, she woke up by the river and realized it was all a wonderful dream.

b) Alice was a clever girl who lived in a big castle with the Queen of Hearts. One sunny day, she was sitting by the river when a large cat stole her watch. Alice was angrier than the cat, so she chased him into a dark hole. In the hole, she found a tea party with a lot of delicious food and hot drinks. She drank a bottle of water and became the tallest girl in the entire world. She decided to stay and live in the strange place forever because she really liked the magical animals and the playing cards. She never woke up from her long sleep by the river.

c) Alice was a young girl who really wanted to be a famous cook in a beautiful garden. While she was walking in the forest, she

found a small baby pig and decided to take it home. She met a white rabbit who gave her a pair of white gloves and a nice coat. Later, Alice went to a big house to help a Duchess make some sweet cakes for a tea party. The Mad Hatter was very happy and ate all the cakes on the table. At the end of the story, Alice became a brave soldier for the Queen of Hearts and played games with small birds every single day. She did not want to go back to the river.

STORY 5: FRANKENSTEIN

by Mary Shelley

Victor Frankenstein was a young man. He loved science. He grew up in Geneva. Geneva is a city in Switzerland. Victor had a happy childhood with his parents and his brothers. He also had a best friend. His name was Henry. The family adopted a girl named Elizabeth. Victor and Elizabeth were very close. Victor was a curious boy. He wanted to learn everything about the world.

When Victor grew older, he went to a university in Germany. He studied science. He worked very hard and spent long hours in a work room. Victor wanted to discover something amazing. He thought, "I want to create life!"

Victor started his work. He collected bones and body parts from graves. He used these parts to build a man. The man was taller than normal men. He was very strong. But Victor made a big mistake. When Victor finished, the man looked ugly and scary. His skin was yellow, and his eyes were dark. Victor was scared of the man that he made.

One night, while a storm was blowing, Victor brought the man to life. He used lightning to make the man move. At first, Victor was excited. But then, he saw the man open his eyes. The man reached out to him. Victor was terrified. He ran out of the room and left the man alone. He went to bed, but he couldn't sleep. He thought, "What have I done?"

The next morning, the man was not there. Victor was glad but also worried. He didn't tell anyone about the man. Soon after, Victor's friend Henry came to visit him. Victor felt better. He decided to stop his work. He wanted to forget about the scary man. But Victor's happiness didn't last long. He received a sad letter from home. The letter read, "Your little brother, William, is dead." Victor was very sad and went back to Geneva.

In Geneva, Victor saw the man again. The man was hiding in the forest. Victor thought, "My creation killed William!" Victor felt very bad. He thought, "This is my fault." But he didn't tell anyone. He was too afraid.

The man was lonely and sad. He wanted love. But everyone was scared of him. People thought he was very ugly. While he was walking in the woods, he found a small house. He hid near it. He watched the family. They were kind and loved each other. The man wanted to be like them. He listened to them and learned to speak.

One day, the man tried to talk to the family. At first, they were kind. But when they saw his face, they were terrified. They screamed and ran away. The man felt very sad and angry. He thought, "No one wants me. Victor made me ugly and lonely!" He decided to find Victor.

The man found Victor in the mountains. He said, "I am very sad and lonely. Make a wife for me. Make someone like me." The man promised, "I will go far away. I will never hurt anyone again." At first, Victor said yes. He felt sorry for the man.

Victor started to make a wife for the man. He worked hard, but he was scared. He thought, "Two of them are more dangerous than one!" He became very afraid. So, he broke the new creation. When the man saw this, he became very angry. He said, “You will suffer because I am suffering! I will hurt you and your family!”

Victor went back to Geneva. He tried to protect his family. But the man followed him. The man killed Victor’s best friend, Henry. Then, he killed Elizabeth on the night of her wedding to Victor. Victor was sadder than ever before. He lost everyone. His father also died from sadness. Victor was all alone. He thought, "I must find the man and kill him."

Victor followed the man for many months. He traveled across mountains and ice. He went to the cold Arctic. The snow there never melted. Victor became weak and sick, but he didn't stop. Finally, he met a group of sailors. Their ship was in the ice. The sailors took Victor on their ship. Victor looked at the captain, Robert Walton. He said, “Listen to my story. Do not make my mistake.”

Victor was very sick. He died on the ship. Then, the man came to the ship to see Victor one last time. The man was sad. He looked at Victor and said, "I have never wanted to hurt people. But I was so lonely and angry." Now Victor was dead. The man said, "I will go far away to die." He walked into the cold ice, and no one saw him again.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Victor Frankenstein studied science because he wanted to create life. _____

b) The man that Victor built was shorter and weaker than normal men. _____

c) While the man was hiding near a small house, he listened to a family and learned to speak. _____

d) Victor finished making a wife for the man, and they went far away together. _____

e) At the end of the story, Victor killed the scary man in the cold Arctic. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Where did Victor go to study science when he grew older?

a) In the cold Arctic

b) In a university in Germany

c) In a small house in the mountains

2. What did Victor use to make the man move during the storm?

a) Lightning

b) A magic potion

c) A small fire

3. Why did the family in the woods run away from the man?

a) Because he stole their food from the house.

b) Because he broke their windows.

c) Because they were terrified when they saw his face.

4. What did the man do when Victor broke the new creation?

a) He went far away and never hurt anyone again.

b) He became very angry and promised to hurt Victor's family.

c) He helped Victor build a new ship to travel home.

5. Who was Robert Walton?

a) The captain of the ship in the ice.

b) Victor's little brother who died in Geneva.

c) Victor's best friend from his childhood.

3 Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Victor made a big _____ because the man he built looked ugly and scary.

b) One night, while a storm was blowing, Victor used _____ to bring the man to life.

c) The man was hiding near a small house and learned to _____.

d) Victor broke the new creation because he thought two monsters were more _____ than one.

e) Victor followed the man to the cold Arctic, where the _____ never melted.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Victor Frankenstein was a young boy who loved to play in the forest near his house in Geneva. One day, while he was walking in the woods, he found a small, yellow dog and decided to take it home. The dog was very smart, and Victor taught it how to speak and read books. A bad storm hit their city, and the dog ran away to the cold mountains. Victor and his sister Elizabeth looked for the dog for many months. Finally, they found the dog living with a kind family in Germany, and they all lived happily ever after.

b) Victor was a happy doctor who lived in the Arctic with his best friend Henry. One day, they found a tall and strong man sleeping in the ice. The man was very friendly and helped them build a big ship to travel the world. Victor and the man traveled to Germany to study science and learn to speak new languages. They never made any mistakes and lived a long, happy life

together. At the end of the story, Victor married Elizabeth, and the tall man became the captain of the ship.

c) Victor Frankenstein was a young man who studied science because he wanted to create life. He used bones to build a tall, strong man, but his creation was very ugly and scary. Victor ran away, and the lonely man became very angry when people were terrified of his face. The man killed Victor's brother, his friend Henry, and his wife Elizabeth. Victor chased the dangerous man to the cold Arctic but became very sick and died on a ship. The man was sad about Victor's death and walked into the ice to die alone.

STORY 6: THE COUNT OF MONTE CRISTO

by Alexandre Dumas

Edmond Dantès was a young man. He lived in Marseille. Marseille is a busy city in France. Edmond worked on a ship. He was a good worker, and everyone liked him. Edmond loved a beautiful woman named Mercédès. They planned a wedding. Edmond was happier than all the other men.

One day, Edmond's life changed. The captain of the ship became very sick and died. Before he died, he gave Edmond a letter. He said, "Take this letter to Paris!" Edmond didn't know it, but the letter was dangerous. Some of Edmond's friends did not like him. Fernand loved Mercédès. Danglars wanted to be the new captain. Villefort wanted to hide a bad secret. They worked together to hurt Edmond.

On the day of the wedding party, soldiers came. They took Edmond away. They said, "You are a bad man!" Edmond cried, "I have never done anything wrong!" But no one listened. Villefort was an important boss in the city. He sent Edmond to a terrible prison. It was the Château d'If. Villefort thought, "I must protect my secret." Edmond stayed in a dark room. He was very scared. He thought, "Why is this happening?"

At first, Edmond was very sad. Then, he met an old man in the prison. His name was Abbé Faria. He was a very smart man. He taught Edmond about languages and history. He also told Edmond a secret. He said, "There is a big treasure on the island of Monte Cristo." Over

the years, Edmond and Abbé became good friends. They planned to escape. But Abbé became very sick and died. Before he died, he gave Edmond a map. It was a map for the treasure.

Edmond found a way to escape. He hid next to his dead friend. The guards threw them into the sea. While Edmond was swimming in the cold water, he felt happy. He was finally free! He went to the island of Monte Cristo and found the treasure. It was an enormous treasure. It had gold and beautiful stones. Edmond was now a very rich man. He decided to punish the men that hurt him.

Edmond changed his name to the Count of Monte Cristo. He returned to France. No one knew him because he looked different. He was now a powerful man. He started his plan. He thought, "I will punish Fernand, Danglars, and Villefort."

Fernand was now a rich man. He married Mercédès. Edmond discovered a secret. Fernand did many bad things for money. Edmond told everyone the truth. Fernand lost all his money and power. Mercédès looked at the Count. She realized the truth! She said, "You are Edmond! Please forgive me!" Edmond forgave her. But he said, "We cannot be together." She left Fernand and lived a quiet life with her son.

Danglars was a rich boss in a bank. He loved money more than people. Edmond used his money to destroy Danglars' bank. Danglars lost everything and became poor. He ran away, but Edmond found him. Edmond said, "You must give back the money!" Edmond did not kill him. He just taught him a hard lesson.

Villefort was a powerful boss. But he had many bad secrets. Edmond found these secrets and told everyone. Villefort's family left him. He became crazy. Edmond felt no sadness for him.

While Edmond was punishing his enemies, he felt strange. He saw the pain. He hurt his enemies, but he also hurt good people. He met a young man and a young woman. They were Maximilien and Valentine. They loved each other. Edmond helped them. He thought, "Love is more important than anger."

In the end, Edmond decided to leave his past. He gave his money and houses to Maximilien and Valentine. Edmond left the country with a kind woman. Her name was Haydée. She also had a hard life. Together, they traveled to find a new and happy life.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. **Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).**

a) Edmond Dantès worked on a ship and lived in Marseille. _____

b) Fernand, Danglars, and Villefort were Edmond's best friends who helped him. _____

c) Abbé Faria was a smart old man who taught Edmond about languages and history. _____

d) Edmond escaped from the prison because the guards opened the door for him. _____

e) At the end of the story, Edmond left the country with a kind woman named Haydée. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Why was Edmond happier than all the other men at the beginning of the story?

a) Because he found the biggest treasure in the world.

b) Because he planned a wedding with a woman named Mercédès.

c) Because he wanted to be the new captain of the ship.

2. What happened while Edmond was swimming in the cold water?

a) He felt happy because he was finally free.

b) He met an old man named Abbé Faria.

c) He lost the map for the treasure.

3. Who was the powerful boss that sent Edmond to a terrible prison?

a) Fernand

b) Danglars

c) Villefort

4. What did Edmond do when Mercédès said, "Please forgive me!"?

a) He forgave her, but said they could not be together.

b) He married her and they lived in a big bank.

c) He told everyone her bad secret and she became poor.

5. How did Edmond help Maximilien and Valentine at the end of the story?

a) He sent them to the Château d'If to find a map.

b) He taught them a hard lesson about anger.

c) He gave his money and houses to them.

3 Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Edmond worked on a ship, and he was a good _____ that everyone liked.

b) Villefort was an important boss who sent Edmond to a terrible _____.

c) Edmond found a way to _____ by hiding next to his dead friend.

d) The treasure on the island of Monte Cristo had gold and beautiful _____.

e) Edmond decided to leave his past because love is more important than _____.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Edmond was a bad man who lived in Marseille and stole money from a rich bank. He worked with his friends Fernand, Danglars, and Villefort to find a big treasure on a sunny island. They traveled together on a beautiful ship, but the captain became very sick and died. Edmond took the treasure for himself and bought a new house for Mercédès in Paris. Later, an old man named Abbé Faria arrived with many guards and sent Edmond to a dark prison because he was a terrible worker. Edmond never escaped the prison, and his friends became the richest men in the city.

b) Edmond Dantès was a powerful boss in Paris who wanted to be the new captain of a big ship. He loved a beautiful woman named Haydée, but she ran away with a young man named Maximilien. Edmond was angrier than all the other men, so he traveled to the island of Monte Cristo to hide his gold. While he was swimming in the cold sea, he met a smart guard who taught him about history and languages. Edmond used his money to destroy the Château d'If because he hated big castles. At the end of the story, he married Mercédès, and they lived quietly in a small bank without any money, power, or good friends.

c) Edmond was a happy young man who worked on a ship and wanted to marry a beautiful woman named Mercédès. Three bad men named Fernand, Danglars, and Villefort worked together to hurt him and sent him to a terrible prison. In prison, he met a smart old man who told him about a big treasure on the island of Monte Cristo. Edmond finally escaped from the prison, found the treasure, and became a very rich and powerful man. He returned to France to punish the men who hurt him. In the end, he learned that love was more important than anger, so he helped two young people and left the country with a kind woman named Haydée.

STORY 7: DRACULA

by Bram Stoker

Jonathan Harker was a young man. He lived in England. He worked in an office. He planned to marry a kind and beautiful woman. Her name was Mina.

One day, Jonathan traveled to a place far away. The place was Transylvania. He went to meet an important man. His name was Count Dracula. The count wanted to buy a house in England. Jonathan thought, "This is a simple trip." But strange things started to happen.

When Jonathan arrived in Transylvania, he saw scared people. The local people were afraid of Count Dracula. They said, "Be careful! Take these things to protect yourself!" Jonathan did not understand. He thought, "I have never seen people so afraid." He traveled to Dracula's castle. The castle was very old and dark.

The count welcomed him. He was polite at first. Count Dracula was taller than Jonathan. He had sharp teeth and cold eyes. He never ate or drank with Jonathan. He was only awake at night. One night, while Jonathan was looking out the window, he saw Dracula. Dracula was crawling on the walls. He looked like a big spider! Jonathan became very scared. He said, "I want to leave!" But Dracula said no. Jonathan was a prisoner.

Jonathan discovered the terrible truth. Dracula was a vampire! He drank blood to stay alive. Dracula planned a trip to England. He thought, "I will find new people to attack in England." Jonathan tried

to stop him, but Dracula was stronger than him. Dracula left the castle. Jonathan was very weak, but he ran away. Finally, he returned to England.

While Jonathan was staying in Transylvania, strange things happened in England. Mina's best friend was Lucy. Lucy became very sick. She started walking at night while she was sleeping. She looked very tired. Lucy's friends tried to help her. They called a special doctor. His name was Professor Van Helsing. He was a very clever doctor. He knew a lot about strange sicknesses.

Van Helsing looked at Lucy. He thought, "A vampire bit her!" He tried to save her. He put garlic around her room. Garlic was the best way to keep vampires away. But it was too late. Lucy became a vampire. Her friends had to stop her. They opened her grave and put a piece of wood through her heart. Lucy finally found peace.

Dracula was now in England. He hid in his new house. He started to attack Mina. She began to feel weak and sick, just like Lucy. Van Helsing and the others realized the danger. They thought, "We must act quickly!" They formed a group to hunt Dracula. The group included Jonathan, Mina, Van Helsing, and other brave friends.

The group learned a secret about Dracula. Van Helsing said, "Dracula needs to sleep in boxes of dirt from his home." They found these boxes and destroyed them. Dracula fought back. He tried to control Mina's mind. He wanted to change her into a vampire. But Mina was very brave. She helped the group track the monster.

The group chased Dracula all the way back to Transylvania. They traveled faster than the vampire. They knew they had to stop him before night. The sun was going down. The group fought Dracula's helpers. Finally, they reached Dracula's box.

Jonathan and his friend Quincy opened the box. Quincy used a knife, and Jonathan cut off Dracula's head. Dracula turned to dust. His evil finally disappeared. But Quincy was hurt during the fight. He died soon after. Before he died, he said, "I am happy because we won."

Mina and Jonathan returned to England. They started a family. They lived a quiet and happy life. They always remembered the brave friends that helped them.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. **Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).**

a) Jonathan Harker traveled to Transylvania to meet Count Dracula. _____

b) Count Dracula was shorter than Jonathan and had warm, friendly eyes. _____

c) Lucy became a vampire after a smart doctor tried to save her. _____

d) Dracula needed to sleep in boxes of water from his home. _____

e) At the end of the story, Jonathan and Mina returned to England and started a family. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What was Lucy doing when she became very sick?

a) She was running in the forest.

b) She was walking at night while she was sleeping.

c) She was traveling to Transylvania.

2. What did Dracula want to buy in England?

a) A big ship

b) A scary castle

c) A new house

3. Who was Professor Van Helsing?

a) The smartest doctor in the world.

b) The most dangerous vampire in Transylvania.

c) The tallest man in England.

4. What did Van Helsing put around Lucy's room to protect her?

a) Sharp knives

b) Garlic

c) Boxes of dirt

5. Who helped Jonathan open Dracula's box at the end of the story?

a) His friend Quincy

b) Professor Van Helsing

c) A local person from Transylvania

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Jonathan Harker worked in an _____ in England before he traveled to Transylvania.

b) Dracula crawled on the walls and looked like a big _____!

c) Dracula drank _____ to stay alive because he was a vampire.

d) Professor Van Helsing knew a lot about strange _____.

e) Jonathan and Quincy opened the box and cut off Dracula's _____.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Jonathan Harker was a doctor who traveled to Transylvania to help a sick man named Count Dracula. Dracula lived in a new,

bright house and loved to eat normal food with Jonathan every day. While Jonathan was visiting the country, his friend Lucy became the smartest doctor in England and traveled to help him. They bought a big castle together and used boxes of dirt to plant beautiful flowers. At the end of the story, Dracula became a good friend, and they all lived happily in Transylvania forever.

b) Count Dracula was a kind and friendly man who wanted to visit England to see his best friend, Professor Van Helsing. While Dracula was sleeping in his castle, Jonathan attacked him with garlic and a piece of wood. Mina and Lucy were vampires who lived in London and drank water to stay alive. They ran away to Transylvania because they were scared of the local people. Finally, Quincy and Jonathan put Dracula in a box of dirt and sent him to a different country so he could start a new family.

c) Jonathan Harker traveled to Transylvania to meet Count Dracula, but he discovered the count was a dangerous vampire. While Jonathan was trapped in the dark castle, Dracula went to England to find new people to attack. In England, Dracula bit Mina's friend Lucy, and she became a vampire. A smart doctor named Van Helsing helped Jonathan, Mina, and their brave friends hunt the monster. The group chased Dracula back to Transylvania, destroyed his boxes of dirt, and cut off his head. Jonathan and Mina returned home and lived a quiet, happy life.

STORY 8: THE PICTURE OF DORIAN GRAY

by Oscar Wilde

Dorian Gray was a very handsome young man. He lived in London. London is a big city in England. Dorian was rich and had many friends. He was a good person, but he didn't know much about the world.

One day, he met an artist. His name was Basil. Basil thought, "Dorian is the most beautiful person in the world!" So, he decided to paint a picture of him.

When Basil finished the painting, everyone liked it. The picture showed Dorian as a young and handsome man. Basil’s friend, Lord Henry, came to see the painting. He was a clever man. He said, "Beauty is the most important thing in life. Enjoy your youth! It will not last forever."

Dorian thought about his life. He said, "I want to stay young and beautiful forever. I will give my soul for this!"

Dorian’s wish came true. He stayed young and handsome, but the picture began to change. Every time he did something bad, the picture became uglier and older.

At first, he didn't see the changes. He spent a lot of time with Lord Henry. Lord Henry said, "Do not worry about right or wrong. Enjoy life!" Dorian only did things for his own happiness.

One day, Dorian met a young actress named Sibyl. She was very beautiful. He fell in love with her. Dorian said, "Will you marry me?" Sibyl was very happy. She said yes.

But something terrible happened. Sibyl acted badly in a play because she loved Dorian too much. Dorian was very angry. He said, "I do not love you anymore!" Sibyl felt very sad. She took her own life.

After Sibyl died, Dorian saw a change in the picture. The face in the painting looked mean. He thought, "My wish came true!" He stayed young and beautiful, but the picture showed his bad soul. Lord Henry said, "Do not worry about her." Dorian put the picture in a secret room. He thought, "No one can see this picture."

Many years passed. Dorian lived a bad life. He did many bad things, but he always looked young and handsome. While his friends were growing older, he stayed the same. People whispered, "He has a dark secret!" Dorian didn't care.

One day, Basil came to visit Dorian. Basil said, "People say terrible things about you. You must become a better person!" Dorian became angry and showed Basil the picture.

Basil saw the ugly picture. He was shocked. He said, "Pray to God! Ask for forgiveness!" Dorian said, "No!"

Dorian was very angry and killed Basil. Then, he felt afraid. He went to his old friend, Alan. Alan was a scientist. Dorian said, "You must destroy Basil's body, or I will hurt you!" Alan was scared, so he helped.

Dorian tried to forget his bad actions. He went to many parties. The picture became uglier than before.

One night, while Dorian was walking in the city, a man grabbed him. The man was James, Sibyl's brother. James said, "I will kill you for my sister!" But Dorian tricked him. He said, "Look at my face. I am too young. I am not Dorian!" James believed him and let him go.

Later, James died in a strange accident. Dorian felt glad, but he also felt afraid. He thought, "I have never been so scared in my life! I want to change."

He decided to destroy the picture. He thought, "This picture is my biggest problem." He took a long knife and cut the painting.

Suddenly, the servants heard a loud noise. They ran into the room. They found Dorian on the floor. He was dead. He looked very old and ugly. But the painting was beautiful again. It showed Dorian as a young man.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Dorian Gray was an old and ugly man at the beginning of the story. _____

b) Basil painted a picture of Dorian as a young and handsome man. _____

c) Every time Dorian did something bad, the picture became uglier and older. _____

d) Dorian killed his friend Basil because he was very angry. _____

e) At the end of the story, the servants found the painting looking old and ugly. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Who told Dorian that beauty is the most important thing in life?

a) Basil

b) Lord Henry

c) Sibyl

2. What happened to the picture after Sibyl died?

a) It became the most beautiful painting in the world.

b) It caught on fire in the secret room.

c) The face in the painting looked mean.

3. Why did James let Dorian go when they met in the city?

a) Dorian tricked him and said he was too young.

b) Dorian gave him a lot of money and gold.

c) James saw the ugly picture in the secret room.

4. What did Dorian use to destroy the picture?

a) A big fire

b) A long knife

c) A heavy stone

5. How did Dorian look when the servants found him dead?

a) Young and handsome

b) Sad and tired

c) Very old and ugly

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Dorian said, "I want to stay young and beautiful _____."

b) Every time he did something bad, the picture became uglier and _____.

c) Dorian put the picture in a _____ room so no one could see it.

d) Dorian went to his old friend Alan because Alan was a _____.

e) Suddenly, the servants heard a loud _____ and ran into the room.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Dorian Gray was an old and ugly scientist who lived in a small house in London. He wanted to be a famous artist, so he asked his friend Basil to teach him how to paint. They painted a big picture of a young actress named Sibyl, and she became very rich. Dorian was a good person who never did anything bad in his entire life. One night, a man named James stole the beautiful painting and ran away to a different country. Dorian was very happy because he did not like the painting, and he lived a long and quiet life with his servants.

b) Dorian Gray was a rich and handsome young man in London. His friend Basil painted a beautiful picture of him. Dorian wished to stay young forever, and his wish came true. However, every time he did a bad thing, the picture became older and uglier. He lived a bad life and did terrible things, but his face stayed young. He even killed his friend Basil to hide his dark secret. At the end of the story, Dorian decided to destroy the ugly painting with a long knife. Suddenly, he died and became very old and ugly, but the picture became young and beautiful again.

c) Lord Henry was a young and handsome actor who worked in a big theater in England. He met a smart girl named Sibyl, and they decided to get married and move to a secret room in Paris. Dorian Gray was their angry servant who wanted to destroy their happiness. He used a long knife to cut all their beautiful clothes

and paintings. Because of this, the police sent Dorian to a dark and terrible prison for many years. When Dorian finally escaped, he was very old, but he decided to become a better person and help poor people in the city.

STORY 9: PERSUASION

by Jane Austen

Anne Elliot lived with her family in a big house. People called it Kellynch Hall. Her father, Sir Walter, was a proud man. He cared a lot about money and rich friends. Anne was quiet and kind, but she often felt lonely. Her older sister, Elizabeth, only cared about herself. Her younger sister, Mary, cried and complained all the time.

Eight years earlier, Anne loved a young man. His name was Frederick Wentworth. They wanted to marry. But Anne's family and her friend Lady Russell said, "Do not marry him!" Frederick had no money. They said, "He is not good enough for you." Anne was very sad. She listened to them because she trusted their advice.

Years later, Anne was 27 years old. She had no husband. Her father spent too much money, and the family had to leave Kellynch Hall. They decided to move to Bath to live more cheaply. The new people in the house were Admiral Croft and his wife, Sophia. Sophia was Frederick's sister.

One day, Anne heard some news. Frederick was coming to visit his sister. He was a captain now. He was not poor anymore. He was richer than before. Anne felt nervous and excited. She thought, "I still love him! But I do not know anything about him."

Anne went to visit her sister Mary in a town called Uppercross. Captain Wentworth came to visit Mary's family. Anne saw him for the

first time in many years. He was confident and handsome, but he was very polite and quiet.

Captain Wentworth spent time with Mary's family. He was very friendly with two sisters. Their names were Louisa and Henrietta. They were young and happy. Louisa liked Captain Wentworth. Anne thought, "He likes her, too." Anne felt sad but tried to hide her feelings.

The group decided to take a trip to Lyme. Lyme was a small town near the sea. Captain Wentworth had friends there. They stayed in Lyme for a few days and enjoyed the fresh air.

While the group was walking near the sea, Louisa tried to be brave. She jumped from some high steps, but she fell and hit her head. Everyone was shocked and scared. Captain Wentworth thought, "This is my fault!" Anne stayed calm and helped Louisa. Captain Wentworth noticed Anne’s kindness. She was stronger than the other girls.

Louisa needed time to get better. She stayed in Lyme with friends. The rest of the group went home.

Anne’s family was now in Bath. Anne went to join them, but she didn’t like the city. Sir Walter and Elizabeth enjoyed parties, but Anne felt sad.

In Bath, Anne met an old friend. Her name was Mrs. Smith. Her husband was dead, and she had no money. She was also sick. But she was happy and smart. Anne enjoyed her visits.

Anne also met a cousin. His name was Mr. Elliot. He was a polite man. He wanted to marry Anne. Sir Walter and Elizabeth liked him very much.

Captain Wentworth came to Bath. Anne saw him at a music concert. She noticed a change. He looked angry when he saw Mr. Elliot. Anne didn't trust Mr. Elliot. She learned a secret from Mrs. Smith. Mrs. Smith said, "Mr. Elliot is a bad man! He only cares about money."

One day, while Anne was talking to a friend, Captain Wentworth listened. Anne said, "Women love longer and more deeply than men." Captain Wentworth heard this. He felt happy.

Later, Captain Wentworth wrote a letter to Anne. The letter read, "I still love you. I have never stopped loving you. Do you feel the same?"

Anne was the happiest woman in the world. She found Captain Wentworth and said, "I still love you, too." They talked about the past and forgave each other.

Anne and Captain Wentworth decided to marry. This time, Anne didn't let anyone stop her. She knew what she wanted. Sir Walter and Elizabeth were not happy at first. But they accepted it because Captain Wentworth was rich. Anne and Frederick began their new life together.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. **Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).**

a) Anne's father, Sir Walter, cared a lot about money and rich friends. _____

b) Eight years earlier, Anne married Frederick Wentworth because he was very rich. _____

c) While the group was walking near the sea, Louisa fell and hit her head. _____

d) Mr. Elliot was a good and kind man who didn't care about money. _____

e) Captain Wentworth wrote a letter to Anne because he still loved her. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Why did Anne's family leave Kellynch Hall and move to Bath?

a) Because Captain Wentworth bought the house.

b) Because her father spent too much money.

c) Because Anne wanted to visit her sister Mary.

2. Who did Captain Wentworth visit when he returned as a rich captain?

a) Mrs. Smith in Bath

b) Mary's family in Uppercross

c) Mr. Elliot in London

3. How did Captain Wentworth feel when Louisa fell and hit her head?

a) He thought it was his fault.

b) He was happier than before.

c) He ran away to Bath.

4. What did Anne learn from her old friend, Mrs. Smith?

a) That Sir Walter was the richest man in Bath.

b) That Captain Wentworth was dead.

c) That Mr. Elliot was a bad man who only cared about money.

5. What did Anne say while she was talking to a friend and Captain Wentworth listened?

a) "Women love longer and more deeply than men."

b) "I want to move to Lyme and live near the sea."

c) "Mr. Elliot is the most handsome man in Bath."

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Her father, Sir Walter, was a _____ man who cared a lot about money.

b) Anne's family had to leave Kellynch Hall to live more _____.

c) Captain Wentworth was not poor anymore; he was _____ than before.

d) While the group was walking near the sea, Louisa jumped from some high _____.

e) Later, Captain Wentworth wrote a _____ to Anne to say he still loved her.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Anne Elliot lived with her proud father and two sisters, but she often felt lonely. Eight years earlier, she did not marry Captain Wentworth because he was poor and her family said no. Later, her family moved to Bath because they had no money, and Captain Wentworth returned as a very rich man. After a trip to Lyme, Captain Wentworth noticed Anne's kindness and strength when a young girl named Louisa fell. In Bath, Anne discovered her cousin Mr. Elliot was a bad man who only cared about money. Finally, Captain Wentworth wrote Anne a beautiful letter, and they happily decided to marry.

b) Anne Elliot was a very rich and happy woman who lived in Bath with her new husband, Mr. Elliot. Eight years earlier, she bought a big house called Kellynch Hall and gave it to her best friend, Mrs. Smith, because she was very kind. Captain Wentworth was a poor sailor who wanted to marry Anne's younger sister, Mary,

but Mary said no. One day, while they were walking near the sea, Captain Wentworth found a big treasure and became the richest man in the world. He bought Kellynch Hall, became a proud boss, and told Anne to leave the city forever.

c) Captain Wentworth was a bad man who only cared about money and rich friends in the big city of London. He wanted to buy Kellynch Hall, so he told Sir Walter and Elizabeth to move to a small and cold town. Anne Elliot was a young girl who never wanted to marry anyone because she loved to travel the world. While she was visiting a new country, she met a kind doctor named Mr. Elliot. Mr. Elliot helped her sick sister, Mary, and they all became very good friends. At the end of the story, Anne stayed in Lyme and never saw Captain Wentworth again.

STORY 10: THE ODYSSEY

by Homer

A long time ago, there was a brave man in Greece. His name was Odysseus. He was the king of Ithaca. Ithaca was a small island. He had a wife named Penelope and a young son named Telemachus. Odysseus was strong and smart, and he loved his family very much. One day, he had to leave them to fight in a big war. People called it the Trojan War.

The war lasted for ten years. Finally, the Greeks won. Odysseus helped them win. He said, “Build a very big wooden horse!” The Greeks hid inside the horse. They left it outside the city of Troy. The people of Troy thought, “This horse is a gift!” They brought it inside their city. At night, the Greeks came out of the horse and opened the city gates. The Greek army entered Troy and won the war.

After the war, Odysseus and his men got on their ships. They started their trip home. But the trip was not easy. The gods were angry. They thought, “The Greeks destroyed Troy. We must punish them!” They sent storms to stop Odysseus. His trip home took another ten years.

First, Odysseus and his men visited an island. It was home to big giants with one eye. The most dangerous giant was Polyphemus. He locked Odysseus and his men in a cave. He wanted to eat them. But Odysseus had a clever plan. He said, “My name is Nobody.” While Polyphemus was sleeping, Odysseus and his men hurt the giant’s single eye with a sharp stick. The giant cried for help. He shouted,

“Nobody is hurting me!” So, the other giants didn't come to help. Odysseus and his men hid under the giant’s sheep and escaped.

Next, they went to the island of Aeolus. He was the god of the wind. Aeolus gave Odysseus a bag of wind to help them sail home. He said, “Do not open this bag!” But the men thought, “There is gold inside!” They opened it. The wind escaped and blew their ship far away.

Later, they came to the island of Circe. She used magic to turn some of the men into pigs. Odysseus went to save them. A god gave him a special plant to protect him. Odysseus looked at Circe and said, “Turn my men back into humans!” Circe helped them. They stayed on her island for a year.

Circe said, “You must visit the land of the dead.” In the land of the dead, Odysseus met a wise man. The wise man told him how to get home. Odysseus also saw his dead mother. He felt sadder than ever before. He thought, “I have never been so sad.” But he knew he had to keep going.

On their way home, they passed the island of the Sirens. The Sirens were dangerous women. They sang beautiful songs to kill sailors. Odysseus said to his men, “Put wax in your ears!” But he wanted to hear the song. He said, “Tie me to the ship!” He listened to the song, but he was safe.

Next, they had to sail between two monsters. Scylla had six heads, and Charybdis was a giant whirlpool in the water. Odysseus sailed closer to

Scylla. He thought, “Losing a few men is better than losing the ship.” Scylla ate six men, but the rest sailed away safely.

After that, they reached the island of the sun god. He had special cows. He said, “Do not touch my cows!” But while Odysseus was sleeping, his men killed and ate the cows. They were very hungry. The sun god was very angry. He asked the king of the gods for help. The king sent a storm. The storm destroyed the ship. Only Odysseus lived.

Odysseus floated in the sea. He reached the island of Calypso. She was a beautiful woman, and she loved Odysseus. She said, “Stay with me forever!” She kept him on her island for seven years. But Odysseus missed his family. Finally, the gods said, “Let him go!” She helped him build a small boat.

Odysseus reached a new island. The people there were kind. Odysseus told them his story. They gave him a ship to sail back to Ithaca.

When Odysseus finally returned home, he found a big problem. Many bad men lived in his house. They wanted to marry Penelope. They wanted to be the new kings. Penelope didn't believe Odysseus was dead. She had a plan. She said, “I will choose a new husband when I finish this cloth.” But every night, she secretly pulled the cloth apart.

Odysseus didn't go into his house right away. He dressed as a poor man. He met his son, Telemachus. Together, they made a plan. Penelope also made a test for the bad men. She showed them a heavy bow. She said, “You must shoot an arrow through twelve axes!”

None of the bad men could do it. They were not strong enough. But the poor man could do it. He was really Odysseus! He picked up the bow and shot the arrow perfectly. Then, he showed his true face. He and Telemachus fought the bad men and won.

Penelope was not sure about Odysseus. She wanted to test him. She said, “Move our bed!” Odysseus was angry. He said, “No one can move that bed! It is a tree!” When Penelope heard this, she knew the truth. It was really her husband! They hugged and cried. They were finally together again.

Odysseus made peace with the families of the bad men. The gods helped them. Finally, Odysseus lived happily with his family.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Odysseus and his men hid inside a very big wooden horse to win the Trojan War. _____

b) Polyphemus was a kind giant who gave Odysseus a bag of gold. _____

c) While Odysseus was sleeping, his men killed and ate the sun god's cows. _____

d) Penelope pulled her cloth apart every night because she wanted to marry a new king quickly. _____

e) Penelope knew it was really Odysseus because he said no one could move their bed. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What did Circe use magic to do?

a) Turn some of the men into pigs.

b) Make a giant whirlpool in the water.

c) Send a storm to destroy the ship.

2. What did Odysseus tell his men to do when they passed the Sirens?

a) Give the Sirens a bag of wind.

b) Put wax in their ears.

c) Shoot an arrow at the women.

3. How long did Calypso keep Odysseus on her island?

a) Ten years

b) One year

c) Seven years

4. What was the test that Penelope made for the bad men?

a) They had to shoot an arrow through twelve axes.

b) They had to move a heavy wooden bed.

c) They had to build a big wooden horse.

5. How did Odysseus dress when he first went to his house in Ithaca?

a) Like a rich king

b) Like a poor man

c) Like a dangerous giant

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Odysseus was the _____ of a small island called Ithaca.

b) Aeolus gave Odysseus a bag of _____ to help them sail home.

c) Scylla was a monster that had six _____.

d) Penelope said she would choose a new husband when she finished her _____.

e) Only Odysseus and Telemachus fought the _____ men and won.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Odysseus was a poor man who lived in Troy with his wife Penelope. One day, the gods sent him a big wooden horse full of gold, and he became the richest king in the world. He decided to travel across the sea to buy some magical pigs from a beautiful woman named Circe. While he was sailing, a giant named Polyphemus stole his ship and his bag of wind. Odysseus never returned to his family, and he stayed on a quiet island with Calypso to sing beautiful songs for the rest of his life.

b) Telemachus was a brave king who went to fight in a big war against the monsters Scylla and Charybdis. After the war, he wanted to go home, but the sun god gave him a heavy bow and asked him to shoot twelve axes. Telemachus traveled for ten years and met many bad men who wanted to eat his special cows. Finally, he built a big bed made from a tree and sailed back to Ithaca. When he arrived, his mother Penelope didn't remember him, so he ran away to live in a dark cave forever.

c) Odysseus was a smart and brave king who left his family in Ithaca to fight in the Trojan War. After the Greeks won the war with a big wooden horse, Odysseus started his long trip home. The trip took ten years because the angry gods sent storms and dangerous monsters to stop him. He faced a giant with one eye, magical women, and a terrible whirlpool. When he finally returned home, he dressed as a poor man to trick the bad men in

his house. He won his wife Penelope back after he shot an arrow perfectly and passed her test about their wooden bed.

STORY 11: WAR AND PEACE

by Leon Tolstoy

It was the year 1805. There was a big war in Europe. Russia was fighting against France. The leader of France was Napoleon. He was a very powerful man. This story is not just about the war. It is also about love, family, and life in Russia.

The story has many characters, but three of them are very important. Their names are Pierre, Andrei, and Natasha. Pierre was a young man. He was kind and wanted to do good things. He was the son of a rich man. When his father died, Pierre became very rich. But he was not happy. He thought, "What should I do with my life?"

Andrei was Pierre’s friend. Andrei was serious and brave. He was a soldier, but he was tired of war. He wanted a quiet and happy life. Andrei’s wife was going to have a baby, but she was very weak. Andrei worried about his family.

Natasha was a young woman from another important family. She was beautiful and lively. Natasha loved to sing and dance. She thought, "I want to find true love and be happy!"

One day, Pierre’s life changed. His father died, and Pierre got a lot of money. Many people wanted to be his friend because he was rich. One of those people was Helene. Helene was beautiful, but she was not kind. Pierre married her, but their marriage was sad. Helene didn't love Pierre. She only wanted his money.

Andrei was also unhappy. He went to war to fight against Napoleon. While he was fighting, his wife gave birth to their baby. But she died because she was too weak. Andrei was very sad. He left the army and went to live in the country with his father and sister. He thought, "I have never been so sad. I will never be happy again."

Natasha's family was not rich, but they were kind. Her father spent too much money, and their family had many problems. Natasha grew up and became a young woman. She went to many parties. One day, she met Andrei. They fell in love. Andrei said, "Will you marry me?" She said yes! But Andrei had to go away for a year before they could marry.

While Andrei was waiting, Natasha met another man. His name was Anatole. He was Helene's brother. Anatole was handsome, but he was a bad man. He didn't really love Natasha. He said, "Escape with me!" Natasha was young and didn't know his bad heart. She agreed to escape, but her family stopped her. Andrei heard about this and felt very angry. He said to Natasha, "I do not want to see you again!" Natasha cried and became very sad.

Pierre felt sorry for Natasha. He knew she made a mistake. But he also knew she was a good person. Pierre started to spend more time with Natasha. He realized he loved her. But he thought, "I cannot tell her. I am still married to Helene." Pierre wanted to do something good with his money. He tried to help poor people.

In the year 1812, the war became very bad. Napoleon attacked Russia with a big army. The Russian people were scared, but they were also

brave. Pierre wanted to help, so he went to the war. He saw terrible things. The French army took him, and he became a prisoner. During this time, Pierre learned to be strong. He met a simple man. The man taught him to find peace in small things.

Andrei went back to the army to fight against Napoleon. He was braver than the other soldiers. But in one battle, he was hurt very badly. His friends took him to the hospital. Natasha came to see him. She still loved him and wanted to take care of him. Andrei forgave Natasha, but he was very weak. Soon after that, he died. Natasha was very sad, but this made her stronger.

The French army reached Moscow. Moscow was a big city. Many people lived there. The Russian people decided to burn the city. They thought, "Napoleon’s army cannot use our city!" Napoleon took Moscow, but his army didn't have food. The Russian winter was extremely cold. Many French soldiers died. Finally, Napoleon’s army left Russia. The Russian people were very happy.

Pierre was free from the French army now and returned home. He changed a lot. He was not sad anymore. He felt happy and knew what he wanted in life. His bad wife Helene was dead. Pierre met Natasha again, and they fell in love. They were both ready to build a happy life. They got married and started a family.

There was peace in Russia again. The war was over. Natasha and Pierre were happy together. They learned a great lesson. They thought, "Love and family are the most important things in life."

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) The leader of France during the big war in Europe was Napoleon. _____

b) Pierre was a poor man who never wanted to help other people. _____

c) Andrei's wife died because she was too weak after she had a baby. _____

d) Natasha successfully escaped with Anatole and they got married in the country. _____

e) At the end of the story, Pierre and Natasha got married and started a happy family. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Why did Helene marry Pierre?

a) Because he was a brave soldier.

b) Because she only wanted his money.

c) Because she loved his beautiful sister.

2. What happened to Pierre when he went to the war in 1812?

a) The French army took him, and he became a prisoner.

b) He became the new leader of the French army.

c) He escaped to a small island in Greece.

3. What did the Russian people do when the French army reached Moscow?

a) They gave Napoleon a big wooden horse.

b) They invited the French soldiers to a big party.

c) They decided to burn the city so the army couldn't use it.

4. Who did Natasha fall in love with first, before she met Anatole?

a) Andrei

b) Helene

c) Napoleon

5. What did Pierre learn from the simple man he met?

a) To fight with a sharp stick.

b) To find peace in small things.

c) To build a big ship.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) The leader of France was Napoleon, and he was a very _____ man.

b) Natasha agreed to escape with Anatole, but her _____ stopped her.

c) In one battle, Andrei was _____ very badly and went to the hospital.

d) The Russian _____ was extremely cold, and many French soldiers died.

e) Natasha and Pierre learned that love and family are the most important _____ in life.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) In the year 1805, there was a big war between Russia and France, led by Napoleon. Pierre was a rich but unhappy man who married a bad woman named Helene. His brave friend Andrei was a soldier who felt very sad after his wife died. Andrei and a young woman named Natasha fell in love, but Andrei died after a terrible battle. The Russian people burned Moscow, and the French army had to leave because the winter was too cold. In the end, Pierre's bad wife died, and he found true happiness by marrying Natasha to start a beautiful family.

b) Pierre and Andrei were two French soldiers who traveled to Moscow to help Napoleon. They met a beautiful woman named Natasha, who was the queen of the city. Natasha didn't like Pierre because he was a very poor man, so she decided to marry a rich boss named Anatole instead. Andrei was very happy for them and gave them a big house in the country to start a family. During the cold winter, Napoleon became good friends with the Russian people. They all lived peacefully together in Moscow without any terrible battles, crying, or sadness.

c) Natasha was a rich woman who loved to fight in big wars against the Russian army. She bought a large ship and traveled to France to become the new leader of the country. Pierre was her brother, and he always wanted to be a poor man, so he gave all his money to the French soldiers. One day, a man named Andrei locked Natasha in a dark room because she tried to escape with his beautiful horse. At the end of the story, Pierre ran away to a small island, and Natasha never saw her family or her friends again.

STORY 12: GREAT EXPECTATIONS

By Charles Dickens

A long time ago in England, there was a young boy. His name was Pip. Pip was poor. He lived with his sister and her husband, Joe. Joe was a kind man who worked with metal. Pip's sister was angrier than other women. Pip's life was simple, but one day, everything changed.

One evening, while Pip was walking near the water, he met a scary man. The man was a bad man from a prison. He was cold and hungry. The man said, "Bring me food and a tool!" He showed Pip heavy chains on his legs. Pip was afraid, so he helped him. The next day, soldiers caught the bad man. But the man said nothing about Pip.

Later, a rich woman invited Pip to her house. Her name was Miss Havisham. She was an old lady. She lived in a big, dark house. All the clocks in the house showed the same time. Miss Havisham always wore an old wedding dress. Her heart was broken because a man left her on her wedding day. She thought, "I will never take off this dress!" Pip thought, "I have never seen such a strange house."

At Miss Havisham's house, Pip met a beautiful girl. Her name was Estella. She was cold and proud, but Pip fell in love with her. Miss Havisham was angry at all men. She said to Estella, "Break his heart!" Pip visited the house many times. Each time, he loved Estella more. Pip felt bad because he was poor. He thought, "I want to be a rich gentleman."

One day, an important man came to see Pip. His name was Mr. Jaggers. He said, "Pip, someone gave you a lot of money. You will be a rich gentleman!" Pip thought, "Miss Havisham gave me this money! She wants me to marry Estella."

Pip left his village and went to London. He lived in a nice house and had a teacher. Pip made new friends. His best friend was a young man named Herbert.

Pip's life in London was exciting. But it was also very expensive. He spent a lot of money on clothes and parties. He forgot about his kind friend Joe. Pip felt bad about his past and never visited him.

As time passed, Pip learned a big secret. Miss Havisham did not give him the money. The money came from the scary man from the prison! His name was Magwitch. Magwitch worked hard in another country. He sent Pip money because Pip helped him many years ago. Pip was very surprised and upset. He thought, "My money comes from a bad man!"

Magwitch came back to England to see Pip. It was dangerous for him. The police wanted to send him to prison again. Pip decided to help Magwitch escape. He knew it was the right thing to do. Pip was becoming a better person. He was not selfish anymore.

Meanwhile, Pip learned sad news. Estella was going to marry a cruel man. Pip was heartbroken. He thought, "I have never been so sad." Miss Havisham felt sorry for the pain. She cried, "Pip, please forgive

me!" Later, her dress caught fire. Pip saved her, but she was hurt very badly.

Pip tried to help Magwitch escape. They went down the river in a boat. But the police caught them. Magwitch was hurt, and he went to prison again. When Magwitch was dying, Pip stayed by his side. Pip discovered a secret about Estella. She was Magwitch's daughter! Pip said to Magwitch, "Your daughter is alive, and she is a beautiful lady." Magwitch smiled and died happily.

After Magwitch died, Pip lost all his money. He was poor again, but he was a better man. He was kinder than before. He went back to his village to see Joe. Joe was married to a kind woman named Biddy. Pip understood his mistake. He said, "Joe, I am very sorry." Joe forgave him.

Years later, Pip visited Miss Havisham's old house. He met Estella there. Her life was hard, and she looked different. She was not proud anymore. She and Pip talked for a long time. Estella said, "We will always be friends." They walked away together, and Pip was happy.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Pip met a scary man with heavy chains on his legs while he was walking near the water. _____

b) Miss Havisham was a young woman who always wore a new red dress. _____

c) Pip went to London because he wanted to be a rich gentleman and live in a nice house. _____

d) Miss Havisham gave Pip all his money because she wanted him to marry Estella. _____

e) At the end of the story, Pip became poor again, but he was a kinder and better man. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Who did Pip live with when he was a young boy?

a) Miss Havisham and Estella

b) His sister and her husband, Joe

c) A scary man from a prison

2. What did all the clocks in Miss Havisham's house show?

a) The same time

b) Different times

c) No time at all

3. Where did Pip's money really come from?

a) A rich lady named Miss Havisham

b) A kind metal worker named Joe

c) A scary man from prison named Magwitch

4. What happened to Miss Havisham later in the story?

a) She married Mr. Jaggers.

b) Her dress caught fire and she was hurt very badly.

c) She moved to London with Pip.

5. What big secret did Pip discover about Estella?

a) She was Magwitch's daughter.

b) She was Joe's sister.

c) She was a poor girl from London.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Pip’s sister was _____ than other women, but Joe was a kind man.

b) The scary man from the prison asked Pip to bring him food and a _____.

c) Miss Havisham lived in a big, dark house and always wore an old _____ dress.

d) Pip's life in London was exciting, but it was also very _____.

e) Magwitch went down the _____ in a boat, but the police caught him.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Pip was a poor young boy who lived a simple life with his sister and a kind man named Joe. One evening, he helped a scary, hungry man from a prison. Later, Pip visited Miss Havisham's strange, dark house and fell in love with a beautiful but cold girl named Estella. Suddenly, Pip received a lot of money and traveled to London to become a rich gentleman. He thought Miss Havisham gave him the money, but he discovered his secret helper was the scary man, Magwitch. Pip lost all his money after Magwitch died, but he returned to his village as a kinder, better person and became good friends with Estella.

b) Pip was a very rich gentleman from London who wanted to buy a big, dark house in a small village. He visited a poor old woman named Miss Havisham and gave her a beautiful, expensive new wedding dress. Estella was a very kind and happy girl who always helped Pip work with metal in his shop. One day, a scary man named Magwitch came to the village, stole all of Pip's money, and ran away. Pip was angrier than anyone else, so he moved to a different country and never returned to his home. He forgot about all his friends and lived completely alone in a small wooden boat on the river for the rest of his life.

c) Joe was a terrible and bad man from a dark prison who wanted to steal gold from Miss Havisham. He hid in a cold river and asked a young boy named Pip to bring him expensive clothes and hot food. Pip didn't want to help him, so Joe ran away to London to find a new teacher and a nice house. Pip decided to stay in his small village and married Estella because she was the richest and most famous girl in the world. Miss Havisham was very happy about this and threw a big, exciting party with many clocks for all her friends. Finally, Magwitch became a brave soldier and helped the police catch Joe in the city.

STORY 13: LES MISÉRABLES

By Victor Hugo

A long time ago in France, there was a man. His name was Jean Valjean. He was poor and hungry. One day, he took some bread to feed his sister's children. The police caught him. They sent him to prison for many years. Life in prison was very hard. When he finally left, people were mean to him. They didn't want to give him work or food.

One night, Jean Valjean was cold and hungry. He knocked on the door of a kind priest. The priest gave him food and a bed. But Jean Valjean was still angry and sad. While the priest was sleeping, Jean Valjean took his silver plates and ran away. The police caught him and brought him back. The priest looked at the police and said, "The silver is a gift!" He gave Jean Valjean more silver. Jean Valjean was shocked. He thought, "I have never seen such kindness. I will start a new life and be a good man."

Jean Valjean changed his name and worked hard. He became a rich boss and the leader of a small town. He helped many people, but he always had to hide his true name. The police wanted to catch him again. A police officer named Javert was always looking for him. Javert was stricter than other men. He thought, "Jean Valjean can never change! I must punish him."

In the town, there was a poor woman named Fantine. She had a young daughter named Cosette. Cosette lived with a hotel owner and his wife. They were very mean to Cosette. They made her work all day. Fantine

worked hard to send money for her daughter. But when the boss saw her child, he said, "Leave this place!" Fantine lost her job. She became very sick and had no money.

Jean Valjean felt sorry for Fantine. He said to her, "I will take care of Cosette." But before he could help, Javert found him. Jean Valjean escaped and went to the hotel. He gave the owners money and took Cosette. They left the town and started a new life together. He loved Cosette like his own daughter. He wanted to give her the happiest life in the world.

Years passed. Cosette grew up and became a beautiful young woman. She met a young man named Marius. Marius was a student. He and his friends wanted to fight for the poor people of France. The students built a wall of furniture in the street and fought the soldiers. Cosette and Marius fell in love. Jean Valjean was worried. He thought, "I do not want to lose her. I do not trust Marius."

In Paris, there were many problems. The students built their wall, and a big fight began. Marius was at the wall, fighting with his friends. Jean Valjean went to the wall to save Marius. He knew about Cosette's love for the boy. The fighting was very dangerous, and many people died. Marius was hurt very badly. Jean Valjean carried the hurt boy through the dark tunnels under Paris. He kept him safe.

Officer Javert was also at the wall. The students caught him. But Jean Valjean looked at Javert and said, "You can go!" Javert didn't understand this kindness. Javert always believed in strict rules. Now,

he began to question his beliefs. He felt too confused and sad, so he jumped into the river and died.

Marius got better. He and Cosette wanted to get married. Jean Valjean said to Marius, "I was a prisoner." Marius was shocked. He thought, "Jean Valjean is a bad man!" Jean Valjean decided to leave. He wanted Cosette to be happy. Later, Marius learned the truth. He discovered Jean Valjean's brave actions. Marius thought, "He is the best man in the world!"

Some time later, Jean Valjean became very sick. He was old and tired. But he was happy because Cosette and Marius came to see him. They said, "We love you! Thank you for everything." Jean Valjean died peacefully. His last thought was, "Cosette is safe and loved."

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Jean Valjean went to prison because he took some bread to feed his sister's children. _____

b) Officer Javert was a kind man who always wanted to help Jean Valjean escape. _____

c) While Marius and his friends were fighting at the wall, Jean Valjean went there to save Marius. _____

d) Fantine was a rich hotel owner who was very mean to Cosette. _____

e) At the end of the story, Marius discovered Jean Valjean's brave actions and thought he was the best man in the world. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What did the kind priest do when the police caught Jean Valjean with the silver plates?

a) He sent Jean Valjean back to prison.

b) He said the silver was a gift and gave him more.

c) He called Officer Javert to punish him.

2. Who was Cosette?

a) Fantine's young daughter.

b) The wife of a hotel owner.

c) A strict police officer in Paris.

3. Why did Fantine become very sick and have no money?

a) Because she jumped into a cold river.

b) Because Jean Valjean took her silver plates.

c) Because she lost her job when the boss saw her child.

4. What did Jean Valjean do when the students caught Javert at the wall?

a) He threw him into the dark tunnels under Paris.

b) He asked Marius to fight him.

c) He looked at Javert and told him he could go.

5. How did Jean Valjean carry Marius when the boy was hurt very badly?

a) In a small boat on the river.

b) Through the dark tunnels under Paris.

c) Over the wall of furniture in the street.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Jean Valjean changed his name and became a rich _____ and the leader of a small town.

b) Javert was _____ than other men and wanted to punish Jean Valjean.

c) The students built a _____ of furniture in the street and fought the soldiers.

d) Javert jumped into the _____ and died because he felt too confused and sad.

e) Jean Valjean carried the hurt boy through the dark _____ under Paris.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Jean Valjean was a rich police officer who lived in a beautiful and expensive hotel in France. He loved to collect silver plates and heavy furniture from all the small towns in the country. One day, he met a strict student named Marius, who wanted to build a tall wall around the city of Paris. Jean Valjean and Marius became best friends and decided to travel the world together on a big ship. They left a young girl named Cosette in a dark tunnel because she was very mean and always took their daily bread. At the end of the story, Jean Valjean lived happily in a quiet prison and never helped anyone again.

b) Fantine was a brave police officer who chased Jean Valjean for many long years because he took her beautiful silver. She finally found him hiding in a dark and old hotel with a young student named Marius. While the brave students were fighting the soldiers in the street, Fantine jumped over a big wooden wall and caught Jean Valjean perfectly. Jean Valjean was angrier than before, so he ran away to a small river and became a poor, hungry priest. Finally, Fantine and Marius got married in the beautiful city of Paris and opened a brand new hotel for rich people. They never saw Cosette or Jean Valjean again in their entire lives.

c) Jean Valjean was a poor man who went to a terrible prison for taking bread, but a kind priest helped him change his sad life. He became a good man and a rich boss, but a strict police officer named Javert always wanted to catch him. Jean Valjean saved a young girl named Cosette from a mean hotel owner after her mother, Fantine, lost her job and became sick. Years later in Paris, Cosette fell in love with a brave student named Marius, who fought in a dangerous battle at a wall of furniture. Jean Valjean saved Marius during the terrible fight, and later Javert jumped into the cold river. Finally, Marius and Cosette learned the truth about Jean Valjean's brave and kind life, and he died peacefully.

STORY 14: THE GREAT GATSBY

by F. Scott Fitzgerald

A long time ago, there was a young man. His name was Nick. He moved to New York City to work. He wanted to learn about money and have an exciting life. He rented a small house in West Egg. West Egg was a place for very rich people. Nick's house was next to a very big and beautiful house. It belonged to a man named Jay Gatsby. Gatsby was a very quiet man.

Nick had a cousin. Her name was Daisy. Daisy was married to Tom. Tom was a very rich and powerful man. They lived in a big house in East Egg. Nick went to visit them. Daisy was beautiful, but Tom was loud and angry. During the visit, Nick learned a bad secret. Tom had a girlfriend. Her name was Myrtle. She was married to a poor man named George. George worked in the Valley of Ashes. It was a very dirty and dark place between West Egg and the city.

One evening, while Nick was sitting at home, he heard music. The music came from the big house next door. Jay Gatsby was having a big party. Many people went to his parties, but no one knew him. One day, Nick got a letter. The letter read, "Please come to my party!" When Nick went to the party, he saw many rich people. There was music and lots of food. But Gatsby was not like the other people. He was polite and quiet. When Nick met him, he was surprised. Gatsby was young and handsome.

Gatsby and Nick became good friends. Gatsby said, "I have a big dream! I love Daisy." They met many years ago. Then, Gatsby went to fight in a war. Daisy married Tom, but Gatsby has never stopped loving her. He bought the big house in West Egg to be near Daisy. He thought, "Maybe she will come to my party one day." He wanted to see her again.

Gatsby asked Nick for help. He said, "Please invite Daisy to your house for tea." Nick agreed, and Daisy came to his house. When she saw Gatsby, she was surprised and very happy. They talked and remembered the past. Soon, they began to meet secretly. Gatsby thought, "Daisy still loves me! She must leave Tom."

One day, Tom, Daisy, Nick, and Gatsby went to New York City. They went to a hotel and had a terrible fight. Tom looked at Gatsby and shouted, "You are a bad man! You get your money from bad things!" Gatsby said to Tom, "Daisy loves me! She does not love you!" Daisy was scared. She cried, "I do not know what to do!" She loved Gatsby, but she couldn't leave Tom.

Later that day, they drove back home. Daisy and Gatsby were in one car. While Daisy was driving, something terrible happened. She hit Myrtle with the car! Daisy was very scared and kept driving. Myrtle died. Everyone was shocked.

Tom talked to George. Tom said, "The car belongs to Gatsby!" George thought, "Gatsby killed my wife!" George went to Gatsby's house. He had a gun and killed Gatsby. Then George killed himself. Gatsby died

alone. He spent his whole life dreaming about Daisy. But in the end, his dream never came true.

Nick was very sad about Gatsby's death. He planned a goodbye for Gatsby. But the people from the parties didn't care. Only three people came. Nick thought, "These rich people are more selfish than anyone else. They only care about money and themselves."

After Gatsby died, Nick decided to leave New York. He went back to his small town. He felt very sad. He saw the truth. People like Tom and Daisy hurt others and never said sorry. Nick liked Gatsby's hope. Gatsby was the most hopeful man in the world. But Nick also learned a lesson. He thought, "It is very dangerous to live in a dream."

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Nick rented a small house in West Egg because he wanted to learn about money. _____

b) Daisy was married to a poor man named George. _____

c) While Daisy was driving the car, she hit Myrtle. _____

d) Many people from the parties came to say goodbye to Gatsby after he died. _____

e) At the end of the story, Nick decided to leave New York and go back to his small town. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Who was the very quiet man that lived in the big and beautiful house next to Nick?

a) George

b) Jay Gatsby

c) Tom

2. What did Gatsby ask Nick to do?

a) Invite Daisy to his house for tea.

b) Fight with Tom in New York City.

c) Work with George in the Valley of Ashes.

3. Where did George work?

a) In a big hotel in New York City.

b) In a big house in East Egg.

c) In a very dirty and dark place called the Valley of Ashes.

4. Why did Gatsby buy the big house in West Egg?

a) To be near Daisy.

b) To hide a bad secret from the police.

c) To sell it to Tom and make a lot of money.

5. What did Nick think about the rich people at the end of the story?

a) They were the kindest people in the world.

b) They were more selfish than anyone else.

c) They were very sad about Gatsby's death.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Nick wanted to learn about money and have an _____ life.

b) One evening, while Nick was sitting at home, he heard _____ from the big house.

c) Daisy and Gatsby began to meet _____ after they talked and remembered the past.

d) George thought that Gatsby _____ his wife, so he went to his house with a gun.

e) Nick learned that it is very _____ to live in a dream.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Nick was a very rich man who moved to New York City to buy a large hotel. He met a poor worker named Jay Gatsby, who lived in the dirty Valley of Ashes. Gatsby wanted to marry Nick's sister, Myrtle, but she was already married to Tom. One night, while they were driving to a big party, Tom crashed his car into a big house and died. Gatsby became the new boss of the city and gave all his money to George. In the end, Nick was happier than before and never left New York City because he loved his new friends.

b) Nick moved to New York to learn about money and lived next to a rich man named Jay Gatsby. Gatsby threw big, beautiful parties, but he really just wanted to see Nick's cousin, Daisy, because he loved her very much. Daisy was married to a loud and angry man named Tom, but she started to meet Gatsby secretly. One day, while Daisy was driving Gatsby's car, she accidentally hit Tom's girlfriend, Myrtle. Myrtle's husband, George, thought Gatsby was the bad driver, so he took a gun and killed him. After his friend died completely alone, Nick decided to leave New York because he learned that the rich people were very selfish.

c) Jay Gatsby was a young soldier who traveled to West Egg to find his lost cousin, George. When he arrived, he bought a small, dark house and never invited anyone to visit him. Daisy and Tom were kind doctors who helped Gatsby when he was very sick after a terrible war. While Gatsby was resting in the hospital, he wrote a long letter to Nick and asked him to come to the city. At

the end of the story, Gatsby married Myrtle, and they all lived a long, happy, and quiet life together in the Valley of Ashes without any problems.

STORY 15: 1984

by George Orwell

A long time ago, there was a man named Winston. He lived in a big city. The city was part of a large country named Oceania. A group called the Party controlled the country. The leader of the Party was a man named Big Brother. Big Brother's face was everywhere. It was on posters and screens. The Party said, "Big Brother is watching you!"

Winston's life was not happy. He worked in a big office. His job was to change old newspapers. The Party said, "People must believe our words!" When the Party changed the past, Winston had to write new stories. This made Winston feel very sad. He knew the truth, but the Party only told lies.

The Party controlled people in many ways. There were cameras everywhere. The Party watched everyone all the time. People couldn't say bad things about Big Brother. A secret police force watched them. They punished people who thought bad things. People were more scared than ever before. They had to love Big Brother and follow all the rules.

Winston felt very lonely. He wanted to know about the world before Big Brother. One day, while he was walking in the city, he bought a small book. He decided to write his thoughts in it. Writing in the book was the most dangerous thing in the world. He thought, "I can go to prison for this!" But Winston wanted to feel free.

At work, Winston saw a young woman named Julia. She worked in the same building. At first, he thought, "She is a bad person! She works for the police!" But one day, Julia gave him a small piece of paper. The paper read, “I love you.” Winston was very happy. He thought, "I have never been so happy!" They began to meet secretly. They talked about their feelings. For the first time, Winston felt hope.

Winston and Julia found a safe place. It was a small room above an old shop. The room didn't have cameras. They felt safe there. They spent time together and dreamed about a free world. But Winston was afraid. He thought, "The Party is very powerful. They do not want us to be happy."

One day, Winston met a man named O’Brien. O’Brien was an important boss in the Party. Winston thought, "O’Brien is different. He hates Big Brother too!" O’Brien invited Winston to his large house. He said, "There is a secret group. We want to fight the Party!" Winston and Julia decided to join this group. They felt very brave.

But Winston and Julia were wrong. O’Brien was not a friend. He worked for the Party! The small room was not safe. There was a hidden camera behind a picture. The police watched them the whole time. One day, the police came and took Winston and Julia away. They sent Winston to a terrible prison. It was a place that punished bad people.

The Party wanted to control people’s minds. In the prison, O’Brien hurt Winston very badly. O’Brien said, "We want complete power! You

must believe our lies." Winston tried to fight, but the pain was too much.

The Party knew Winston's biggest fear. Winston was very afraid of rats. O'Brien put a box of hungry rats near Winston's face. Winston screamed, "Do not hurt me! Hurt Julia!" This was exactly what the Party wanted. They wanted Winston to stop loving Julia. After this, Winston changed completely.

When Winston left the prison, he was a different man. He didn't feel angry or sad anymore. He spent his days at a cafe. He drank and watched the news. He thought about Julia, but he didn't love her. He saw her one day, but they said very little. The Party took their love away.

In the end, Winston looked at a picture of Big Brother. He felt happy. The Party won. Winston didn't dream of freedom anymore. He loved Big Brother.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Winston worked in a big office to change old newspapers for the Party. _____

b) While Winston was walking in the city, he bought a large camera. _____

c) Julia gave Winston a small piece of paper that said, "I love you." _____

d) O'Brien was a true friend who helped Winston and Julia escape the Party. _____

e) At the end of the story, Winston did not love Julia anymore and loved Big Brother. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What did the secret police force do?

a) They bought small books for the people.

b) They punished people who thought bad things.

c) They helped people escape from Oceania.

2. Why did Winston and Julia feel safe in the small room above the old shop?

a) Because there was a hidden camera behind a picture.

b) Because O'Brien lived there with them.

c) Because they thought the room didn't have cameras.

3. Who was O'Brien?

a) An important boss in the Party.

b) A young man who worked with old newspapers.

c) The leader of a free world.

4. What was Winston's biggest fear in the terrible prison?

a) A box of hungry rats.

b) A small piece of paper.

c) A secret police camera.

5. How did Winston feel when he looked at the picture of Big Brother at the end?

a) He felt angry and sad.

b) He felt happy because he loved Big Brother.

c) He felt very lonely and afraid.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) The Party changed the past, and Winston had to write new _____.

b) A secret police force punished people who thought bad _____.

c) Winston and Julia found a _____ place above an old shop.

d) O'Brien put a box of hungry _____ near Winston's face.

e) At the end of the story, Winston didn't dream of _____ anymore.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Winston was a very happy man who lived in a small, quiet town called Oceania. He worked in a big shop that sold old newspapers, small books, and beautiful posters. One day, he met a kind police officer named O'Brien. O'Brien gave Winston a special box of hungry rats to keep as pets. Winston and his best friend Julia loved the rats very much and built a safe room for them above the shop. The Party was very happy about this, so Big Brother gave them a lot of money. They bought a big cafe in the city and lived happily ever after without any problems, pain, or dangerous cameras.

b) Winston lived in a big city controlled by the Party and a leader named Big Brother. The Party watched everyone with cameras and punished people who thought bad things. Winston felt sad and lonely, so he secretly wrote his thoughts in a small book. He fell in love with a young woman named Julia, and they dreamed of a free world together. However, a boss named O'Brien tricked them, and the police sent them to a terrible prison. In the prison, the Party used Winston's biggest fear to break him, and he finally stopped loving Julia and loved Big Brother instead.

c) Julia was a very important boss in the Party who wanted to help poor people feel free. She worked in a big, bright office with Big Brother, and they wrote new, happy stories together. One day, while she was walking in the city, she met a young man named

Winston. Winston was a bad man who wanted to destroy all the cameras and computers in the country. Julia and a brave soldier named O'Brien worked together to stop Winston and put him in a small, dark room. After many years, Winston learned to be a good person, and they all opened a secret shop to sell paper and pens.

STORY 16: TO KILL A MOCKINGBIRD

By Harper Lee

A long time ago, in the 1930s, there was a small town. The town was Maycomb. It was in the south of the United States. The town was quiet and slow. People knew each other, and life was simple. But some people in the town were very mean to black people.

In Maycomb, there was a young girl. Her name was Scout. She was six years old. Scout had an older brother named Jem. He was older and taller than Scout. They lived with their father, Atticus. Their mother was dead, so Atticus cared for them alone. Atticus was a man who worked with the law. He was kind and smart. He thought, "I must always do the right thing."

Scout and Jem spent their days playing outside. Their best friend was a boy named Dill. He came to Maycomb every summer. The three children had fun together. They played games and told stories. They had a strange neighbor. His name was Boo Radley. Boo never came outside. Many people thought, "He is a crazy man!" The children were scared of Boo, but they wanted to see him.

One summer, the children ran to Boo’s house and touched it. But nothing happened. Later, while they were walking home, they found small gifts in a tree. Someone left them gum, coins, and small toys. Scout and Jem thought, "Boo is leaving these gifts! He is not scary. He is kind."

Later, Atticus had a very important job. He had to help a black man named Tom. A white woman named Mayella said, "Tom hurt me!" In Maycomb, most white people did not like black people. Many people in the town were angry at Atticus. They shouted, "Do not help him!" But Atticus believed in fair rules. He said to his children, "Treat everyone with respect."

Life became harder for Scout and Jem. Other children were mean to them because their father was helping Tom. Scout wanted to fight them. But Atticus said, "Stay calm, Scout. You must be brave and strong. Doing the right thing is not always easy."

The big day in court began. Many people came to watch. Atticus worked hard to show the truth. He asked questions. He showed that Mayella was lying. Her father, Bob, was the bad man who hurt her. But the men in charge didn't listen to Atticus. They said, "Tom is a bad man!" They did this because Tom was black. Scout and Jem were sadder than ever before. They saw the bad things in the world.

After that day, things got worse. Tom tried to escape from prison. But the police caught him and killed him. Scout and Jem cried. They knew Tom was a good man. Atticus tried to explain. He said, "People do bad things because they are afraid."

Bob was very angry at Atticus. He hated Atticus because Atticus showed the truth. Bob thought, "I will hurt his family!" One dark night, while Scout and Jem were walking home, Bob attacked them. Jem was hurt, and Scout was very scared. But a man came and saved them. It was Boo Radley!

Boo Radley came out of his house to protect the children. He fought Bob and killed him. Then, Boo took the children home. Scout looked at Boo. She thought, "I have never seen a braver man. He is a kind person." Scout finally understood a big lesson. She thought, "You should not judge a person before you know them."

In the end, Scout stood near Boo's door. She looked at the world from his house. She learned about love and understanding. Atticus taught her a lot. He said, "The world is not always fair, but we must try to make it better." He also said, "You never really understand a person until you look at things from their point of view."

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Scout and Jem lived with their mother and father in Maycomb. _____

b) Boo Radley left small gifts like gum, coins, and toys in a tree for the children. _____

c) Atticus decided not to help Tom because the people in the town were angry. _____

d) While Scout and Jem were walking home one dark night, Bob attacked them. _____

e) At the end of the story, Scout learned that you should not judge a person before you know them. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What was the name of Scout and Jem's best friend who came every summer?

a) Bob

b) Dill

c) Tom

2. Why were the men in charge angry at Tom in the court?

a) Because he was a black man.

b) Because he left small toys in a tree.

c) Because he was a white police officer.

3. What happened when Tom tried to escape from prison?

a) He ran away to a new city.

b) Boo Radley saved him from the dark.

c) The police caught him and killed him.

4. Who came out of his house to protect the children when Bob attacked them?

a) Atticus

b) Dill

c) Boo Radley

5. What did Atticus teach Scout about the world?

a) The world is not always fair, but we must try to make it better.

b) You must always fight other children to stay safe.

c) The world is a perfect place where everyone is kind.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Atticus was a kind and smart man who worked with the _____.

b) The children found gum, coins, and small toys in a _____.

c) Atticus said to his children, "Treat everyone with _____."

d) While Scout and Jem were walking home, Bob attacked them, and Jem was _____.

e) Scout looked at Boo and thought, "I have never seen a _____ man."

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Scout and Jem lived in a small town called Maycomb with their kind father, Atticus, who worked with the law. Atticus tried to

help a black man named Tom in court, but many people were angry and mean because of this. A bad man named Bob hated Atticus for showing the truth and attacked Scout and Jem one dark night. A strange neighbor named Boo Radley, who never came outside, saved the children and protected them from Bob. Finally, Scout understood that Boo was a kind and brave person, and she learned an important lesson about understanding others and not judging them.

b) Scout and Jem were two young children who lived in a very big and noisy city in the United States. Their father, Atticus, was a bad man who never helped poor people or worked with the law. One summer, a dangerous man named Boo Radley stole all their toys and coins from a big tree in their garden. Atticus was angrier than the police, so he sent Tom and Boo to a terrible prison in Maycomb. At the end of the story, Scout ran away from her house because she hated her neighbors, and she never learned any good lessons about love or understanding in her entire life.

c) Atticus was a poor man who lived alone in a dark house in Maycomb because he didn't have any children or a wife. He spent his days playing games with a young boy named Dill and looking for small coins and gum in the street. One day, a rich woman named Mayella gave him a lot of money to buy a new car and travel the world. While he was driving to a different city, he met a strange police officer named Bob who taught him how to read and write books. Atticus became the smartest teacher in

the town and helped everyone build a beautiful new hospital for the doctors.

STORY 17: THE CATCHER IN THE RYE

by J.D. Salinger

Holden Caulfield was a young boy. He was 16 years old. He came from a rich family in New York City. Holden went to many schools, but he got into trouble a lot. He didn't like rules. He often felt lonely. At the start of the story, Holden was at Pencey Prep. It was a school in Pennsylvania. He got bad grades. The teachers said, "You must leave!" This was not the first time a school did this to Holden.

Holden didn't want to see his parents. He decided to leave the school early. Before he left, he said goodbye to his favorite teacher, Mr. Spencer. Mr. Spencer tried to help him, but Holden didn't listen. He packed his things and went to New York City. He thought, "I will spend a few days here before going home."

In New York, Holden stayed in a hotel. He felt lonely, so he tried to talk to people. He met three women in the hotel. While the women were drinking, Holden danced with them. They laughed at him. This made him feel worse. Later, he called a girl named Sally. He said, "Let's go on a date!" Sally said yes.

Holden spent his days walking around the city. He thought about his younger brother, Allie. Allie died a few years ago. Allie was smarter than the other boys. Holden missed him a lot. He also thought about his little sister, Phoebe. Phoebe was 10 years old. Holden loved her very much. He thought, "She is the best person in the world. She really understands me."

When Holden met Sally, they went to a play. Then they went to an ice-skating place. At first, they had a good time. But then Holden started talking about his problems. He said, "I want to escape! Let's go live in the woods!" Sally got upset. She said, "You are crazy!" They argued, and Holden left. He felt lonelier than before.

Holden tried to find a friend. He called an old friend named Carl. They met for a drink. Carl was older, but he didn't want to listen. Carl left quickly. That night, Holden got very drunk. While he was walking around the city, he thought about his life. He decided to go home and see Phoebe.

When Holden got home, it was very late. He went into the apartment very quietly. He woke up Phoebe. She was very happy to see him, but she was also worried. She knew about his school. Holden said, "I have a dream. I want to be the catcher in the rye. I want to catch children and protect them!" He wanted to protect others, but he felt very lost.

Holden's parents came home, so Holden had to leave. He went to the home of an old teacher. His name was Mr. Antolini. Mr. Antolini was kind to Holden and gave him a bed. But Holden felt strange in the house. He thought, "I have never been so scared." He left the house and spent the rest of the night outside.

The next day, Holden felt very tired and sick. He decided to leave New York and travel far away. He wrote a note to Phoebe. The note read, "Meet me at the museum!" When Phoebe arrived, she had a large bag. She said, "I want to go with you!" Holden said, "No, you cannot go." They had a fight, and Phoebe started to cry.

To make her happy, Holden took her to the park. She rode on a carousel. Holden watched her. For the first time in a long time, he felt happy. He thought, "This is a very peaceful moment."

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Holden was 16 years old and came from a rich family in New York City. _____

b) Holden's favorite teacher, Mr. Spencer, told him to escape to the woods. _____

c) While the women were drinking in the hotel, Holden danced with them. _____

d) Holden's younger brother Allie was still alive and lived in New York. _____

e) At the end of the story, Holden felt happy while he watched Phoebe ride on a carousel. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Why did Holden leave Pencey Prep early?

a) Because he wanted to go on a date with Sally.

b) Because he got bad grades and the teachers told him to leave.

c) Because his little sister Phoebe was very sick.

2. Who did Holden want to protect in his dream about the catcher in the rye?

a) Children

b) Teachers

c) Older boys

3. What happened when Holden went to an ice-skating place with Sally

a) They had a terrible fight with Mr. Spencer.

b) They bought a large bag and went to a museum.

c) Holden said he wanted to escape, and they argued.

4. Why did Holden wake up Phoebe when he went home?

a) Because she was his favorite teacher.

b) Because he loved her and she understood him.

c) Because she had a lot of money for a hotel.

5. Where did Holden sleep after he left his parents' apartment?

a) At the home of an old teacher named Mr. Antolini.

b) In a dark room above an old shop.

c) On a carousel in the park.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Holden got into trouble a lot because he didn't like _____.

b) Holden went into the apartment very quietly and woke up _____.

c) Holden thought his younger brother Allie was _____ than the other boys.

d) Phoebe met Holden at the museum, and she had a large _____.

e) Holden felt happy when he watched his sister ride on a _____.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Holden was a young and happy boy who lived in New York City with his rich brother Allie. He loved his school in Pennsylvania and always got the best grades in his class. One day, his favorite teacher, Mr. Spencer, invited him to a big party at a hotel. Holden danced with three beautiful women and decided to marry a girl named Sally. He never felt sad or lonely, and he bought a big carousel in the park so his little sister Phoebe could play there every day with her friends.

b) Holden was a young boy who got bad grades and had to leave his school in Pennsylvania. He didn't want to go home, so he went to New York City for a few days. He felt very lonely and tried to talk to different people, like three women in a hotel and a girl named Sally. Holden missed his dead brother Allie and loved his little sister Phoebe very much. He wanted to be a catcher in the rye to protect children. Finally, he felt a peaceful and happy moment when he watched Phoebe ride a carousel in the park.

c) Holden was a poor old man who lived in the woods because he didn't like the rules of the big city. He traveled to New York to find a secret museum with his best friend Carl. While they were walking in the park, they found a lost girl named Phoebe. Holden and Carl helped Phoebe find her parents, Mr. and Mrs. Antolini. The parents were very happy and gave Holden a lot of money to buy a new house. After that, Holden became a teacher and worked at a very famous school in Pennsylvania for the rest of his life.

STORY 18: SENSE AND SENSIBILITY

by Jane Austen

A long time ago in England, there was a family. They were the Dashwoods. They lived in a big house and were happy. But when Mr. Dashwood died, everything changed. Mr. Dashwood's son got the house and all the money. The law gave everything to the son. Mr. Dashwood's wife and her three daughters had to leave. Their names were Elinor, Marianne, and Margaret. They were very sad.

Elinor was the oldest daughter. She was calm and smart. She always thought before she spoke. Marianne was the second daughter. She was very different. She felt things very deeply. She often spoke without thinking. Margaret was the youngest sister. She was happy and liked to play.

The Dashwoods moved to a small house in the country. It belonged to a kind man. His name was Sir John. He was friendly and often invited the Dashwoods to his house. There, they met many new people. They met a quiet man named Colonel Brandon. They also met a handsome young man named Willoughby.

Marianne fell in love with Willoughby. He loved poems, just like her. They spent a lot of time together. She thought, "He is perfect! We will marry!" But one day, he suddenly left. He said nothing. Marianne was sadder than anyone else. She cried and became very sick.

While Marianne was crying, Elinor had her own secret sadness. Before moving, she met a man named Edward. He was a kind man, and she

liked him very much. She thought, "He likes me too." But she heard bad news. Edward planned to marry another woman. Her name was Lucy. Elinor was very upset, but she stayed calm. She thought, "I will not show my sadness."

Time passed. Colonel Brandon began to care for Marianne. He was older than her. He was quiet and patient. He often helped the Dashwood family. Marianne didn't notice his feelings. She only thought about Willoughby.

One day, the Dashwoods went to London. Marianne hoped to see Willoughby. She wrote him many letters. But he didn't answer. Then, at a party, she saw him. He was cold. He said, "I am going to marry a rich woman." Marianne was heartbroken. She thought, "He only cares about money! He has never loved me."

While they were staying in London, Elinor had to listen to Lucy. Lucy said, "I am going to marry Edward!" Lucy was proud. Elinor listened politely. It hurt her heart, but she couldn't change the situation.

After returning to the country, Marianne became very sick. While she was sleeping, Colonel Brandon stayed by her bed. He cared for her. Marianne saw his kindness. She thought, "Love can grow slowly when people are kind." She started to get better.

Later, the Dashwoods heard surprising news. Lucy left Edward. She married his brother! Edward came to see Elinor. He said, "I always cared about you. But I had to keep my promise to Lucy. Now I am

free. Will you marry me?" Elinor was the happiest woman in the world. She said yes.

Marianne also found happiness. She married Colonel Brandon. Over time, she loved him deeply. His kindness and patience won her heart. The Dashwood family was happy again. They thought, "We have never been this happy."

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Mr. Dashwood's wife and three daughters got the big house and all the money when he died. _____

b) Elinor was the oldest daughter and always thought before she spoke. _____

c) Marianne fell in love with a quiet man named Colonel Brandon first. _____

d) While Marianne was sleeping, Colonel Brandon stayed by her bed and cared for her. _____

e) At the end of the story, Lucy married Edward and Elinor married Willoughby. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What happened to the Dashwood family when Mr. Dashwood died?

a) They bought a new big house in London.

b) They had to leave because the son got the house and the money.

c) They became the richest family in England.

2. Who did Marianne fall in love with because he loved poems just like her?

a) Sir John

b) Edward

c) Willoughby

3. Why didn't Edward marry Elinor at first?

a) Because he planned to marry another woman named Lucy.

b) Because he wanted to travel the world with his brother.

c) Because he was sadder than anyone else in the country.

4. What did Willoughby say to Marianne at the party in London?

a) "I want to read poems with you."

b) "I am going to marry a rich woman."

c) "I am going to buy a small house in the country."

5. How did Marianne's feelings for Colonel Brandon change at the end of the story?

a) She saw his kindness and loved him deeply.

b) She was very angry and never spoke to him again.

c) She thought he only cared about money and big houses.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Elinor was calm and smart, and she always thought before she _____.

b) Marianne was sadder than anyone else and became very _____.

c) Colonel Brandon was older than Marianne, but he was quiet and _____.

d) While they were staying in London, Elinor had to _____ to Lucy.

e) Elinor was the _____ woman in the world when Edward asked her to marry him.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) The Dashwood family had to move to a small house in the country after Mr. Dashwood died. The oldest daughter, Elinor, liked a kind man named Edward, but he planned to marry a woman named Lucy. The second daughter, Marianne, fell in love with a handsome man named Willoughby, but he left her to marry a rich woman. Marianne became very sick, and a quiet man named Colonel Brandon cared for her. In the end, Lucy married Edward's brother, so Edward married Elinor, and Marianne found happiness with Colonel Brandon.

b) The Dashwood family lived in a small house in London and wanted to move to a big castle. Elinor and Marianne were two sisters who loved to write poems and read books all day long. They met a rich man named Sir John, who gave them a lot of gold and a beautiful new horse. One day, Edward and Willoughby stole the gold and ran away to another country because they wanted to be the richest men in the world. Finally, the sisters bought a big ship and traveled across the sea to find their money, but they never saw the men again.

c) Mr. Dashwood gave all his money to his three daughters, Elinor, Marianne, and Margaret, so they were very rich and happy. They bought a big hotel in the country and invited Colonel Brandon and Edward to work for them. Marianne was the oldest sister and she was always very calm and smart, but Elinor was loud and

angry. While they were working at the hotel, Lucy and Willoughby arrived and started a big fire that destroyed everything. At the end of the story, the Dashwood sisters moved to a dark forest and never spoke to any people again in their entire lives.

STORY 19: LITTLE WOMEN

by Louisa May Alcott

Once upon a time, there were four sisters. Their names were Meg, Jo, Beth, and Amy. People called them the March sisters. They lived with their mother in a small house. Their father was far away. He was a soldier in a war. The family was poor, but they loved each other very much. They were happier than many rich families.

The story begins at Christmas. The sisters were sad. They had no money for gifts. They wanted to buy nice things, but they had to help their mother. Their mother was the kindest woman in town. She said, "We must always help other people." One morning, the sisters gave their breakfast to a very poor family. The poor family had no food. The sisters felt very happy.

Each sister was different. Meg was the oldest sister. She was very beautiful. She thought, "I want a nice house and beautiful clothes!" Jo was the second sister. She didn't like dresses. She loved to read and write stories. She said, "I will be a famous writer!" Beth was the third sister. She was very quiet and gentle. She played the piano beautifully. Amy was the youngest sister. She loved to draw and paint pictures. She thought, "I want to be rich and famous!"

One day, the sisters met a new boy. His name was Laurie. He lived with his grandfather in a very big house next door. Laurie was a kind and friendly boy. He became their best friend. He liked Jo a lot. She

was more fun than the other girls. Laurie often visited the March family. They had many happy times together.

The sisters had many hard times. Meg went to a party with rich friends. She felt sad about her simple clothes. One day, their father became very sick. Jo cut off all her hair and sold it! She gave the money to her mother. Later, while Beth was helping a poor family, she became very sick too. The sisters were very worried. They stayed by her bed and cared for her. Beth felt better, but she was always weak after that.

As the girls grew older, their dreams changed. Meg fell in love with John. He was Laurie's teacher. John was not rich. But Meg thought, "I love him!" They got married. Jo was sad. She thought, "I have never been without my sister." But she knew Meg was happy.

Laurie loved Jo. He said, "Jo, please marry me!" But Jo didn't love Laurie in that way. She said, "No, Laurie. We are only friends." Laurie was heartbroken. He traveled to Europe to forget his sadness. At the same time, Amy traveled to Europe with her rich aunt. In Europe, Amy met Laurie. They spent time together. Laurie understood his true feelings. He loved Amy! Amy loved Laurie too. They decided to get married.

Jo's big dream came true. She wrote stories and sold them. People liked her stories. But then, Beth became very sick again. While the family was sitting around her bed, Beth died peacefully. Jo was sadder than ever before. She thought, "I have never felt this kind of pain." She found comfort in her writing and her family's love.

After Beth died, Jo decided to open a school for boys. She wanted to help others. She met a kind teacher. His name was Professor Bhaer. He said, "Jo, write stories from your heart!" They fell in love and got married. Together, they ran the school and lived a happy life.

In the end, the March sisters found happiness in different ways. Meg had a loving family with John. Jo and her husband built a good school. Amy and Laurie lived a rich and happy life. They always remembered Beth. They thought about her kindness and love every day.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. **Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).**

a) The March sisters gave their Christmas breakfast to a very poor family. _____

b) Jo loved to wear beautiful dresses and wanted a nice house. _____

c) While Beth was helping a poor family, she became very sick. _____

d) Laurie asked Jo to marry him, and she said yes. _____

e) At the end of the story, Jo opened a school for boys with Professor Bhaer. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Who lived in a very big house next door and became the sisters' best friend?

a) John

b) Professor Bhaer

c) Laurie

2. What did Jo do to get money when her father became very sick?

a) She cut off all her hair and sold it.

b) She sold her beautiful dresses.

c) She played the piano for rich people.

3. Why did Laurie travel to Europe?

a) Because he wanted to buy a big house.

b) Because Jo said no when he asked her to marry him.

c) Because he wanted to open a school for boys.

4. What happened while the family was sitting around Beth's bed?

a) She died peacefully.

b) She wrote a famous story.

c) She met a kind teacher.

5. Who did Amy marry at the end of the story?

a) Professor Bhaer

b) Laurie

c) John

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Their father was far away because he was a _____ in a war.

b) One morning, the sisters gave their _____ to a very poor family.

c) Meg was the oldest sister, and she was very _____.

d) Jo cut off all her _____ and sold it to give the money to her mother.

e) After Beth died, Jo decided to open a _____ for boys.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Meg, Jo, Beth, and Amy were four rich sisters who lived alone in a big castle in Europe because they hated their parents. Meg was the youngest sister, and she loved to play the piano for her rich friends every day. One cold Christmas, they stole breakfast from

a poor family and ran away to a big, expensive hotel in London. Laurie was a bad soldier who wanted to catch them and send them to prison, but Jo cut off his hair and sold it. In the end, the sisters never got married, and they bought a huge ship to live on the ocean forever. They never helped anyone, forgot about their friends, and were sadder than all the other families.

b) Professor Bhaer was a rich soldier who traveled to a small town to buy a new, beautiful house for his grandfather. He met four angry sisters named Meg, Jo, Beth, and Amy, who never wanted to help poor people or share their food. While the sisters were fighting in the street, Professor Bhaer gave them a lot of money to buy expensive dresses, beautiful clothes, and new shoes. Jo fell in love with a poor boy named John, but she had to leave him because she wanted to be a famous painter in Europe. At the end of the story, Beth opened a big hospital for sick animals, and the March family became the richest and most famous people in the whole world.

c) The March sisters, Meg, Jo, Beth, and Amy, lived with their kind mother in a small house while their father was a brave soldier in a war. The family was poor, but they were very happy and often helped other people in their town, like giving away their Christmas breakfast. They became best friends with a friendly boy named Laurie, who lived next door in a very big house. As the girls grew older, their lives changed: Meg married a teacher named John, and Amy married Laurie after they spent time together in Europe. Jo was sadder than ever when her gentle

sister Beth died peacefully, but she found comfort in writing stories. Finally, Jo married a kind teacher named Professor Bhaer, and they opened a good school for boys together.

STORY 20: THE SCARLET LETTER

by Nathaniel Hawthorne

A long time ago, there was a young woman. Her name was Hester. She lived in a small town. The people in the town had very strict rules. They punished bad people. One day, Hester was in big trouble. She had a baby, but she didn't have a husband. This was a terrible bad action in her town. The people were angrier than ever before.

Hester had to stand on a high wooden floor in the middle of the town. Everyone looked at her. She had to hold her baby girl. The baby's name was Pearl. Hester wore a big red letter "A" on her dress. The letter "A" meant she was a bad woman. She had to wear the letter for everyone to see. But Hester stayed calm and strong. She loved her baby. She thought, "I will never say the name of Pearl's father!"

Hester lived alone with Pearl in a little house. She made beautiful clothes for people. The people liked her clothes, but they still treated her badly. They always looked at the red letter. Hester was kind and helped poor people. Pearl was a lively child. She asked many questions. The other children didn't play with her. They said, "Your mother is a bad woman!"

One day, the leaders of the town wanted to take Pearl away. They thought, "Hester is a bad mother!" Hester was very upset. She went to the town leader's house. There was a kind church man at the house. His name was Arthur Dimmesdale. He was young and smart. Hester said to him, "Please help me!" Dimmesdale looked at the leader and said,

"Pearl must stay with her mother! Pearl is a gift from God." The leader listened, and Hester kept her daughter.

But Dimmesdale had a big secret. He was Pearl's father! He loved Hester, but he was too afraid. He thought, "I cannot tell the truth." He felt very bad about his secret. His bad feelings made him sick. He became weak. He often put his hand over his heart. He thought, "My heart hurts more than anything." The people thought, "He is a holy man!" They didn't know his secret.

There was another man in the town. His name was Roger Chillingworth. He was Hester's husband, but he was far away for a long time. When he came back, he saw Hester's red letter. He was angry, but he didn't show it. He thought, "I will find Pearl's father!" Chillingworth acted like a doctor to get close to Dimmesdale. He became his friend. But he only wanted to discover his secret. Chillingworth was the angriest man in the town. He thought, "I will hurt the father!"

Hester saw Chillingworth's dark heart. She thought, "He wants to hurt Dimmesdale!" She met Dimmesdale in the dark forest. No one could see them there. Hester said, "Chillingworth is my husband! He wants to hurt you." Dimmesdale was shocked and angry, but he forgave Hester. He said, "I still love you. Let's leave this town and start a new life!" They wanted to take Pearl and go far away.

Hester took off the red letter in the forest. She felt free. She said, "I have never been so happy!" She let her hair down. She looked beautiful again. But while she was smiling, Pearl started to cry. Pearl

didn't know her mother without the letter. Pearl said, "Put the letter back!" Hester had to put the letter on her dress again.

Dimmesdale planned to leave with Hester. But first, he had to speak to the town. He gave a powerful speech. The people loved him, but he felt very weak. After the speech, he did something surprising. He stood on the high wooden floor with Hester and Pearl. He looked at the people and said, "I am Pearl's father!" Then, he fell to the ground. While Hester was holding him, Dimmesdale died in her arms. He finally felt free.

Chillingworth was very angry. He thought, "I cannot hurt him now!" Without his anger, he became sick and died. Before he died, he left all his money to Pearl. Pearl and Hester left the town. Pearl grew up and became rich. She got married and had a happy life. Hester came back to the town many years later. She still wore the red letter. But now, the people respected her. They saw her kindness. Hester helped other women. She became the most important woman in the town.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Hester had to wear a big red letter "A" because the people thought she was a good woman. _____

b) Arthur Dimmesdale was Pearl's father, but he kept it a big secret because he was afraid. _____

c) Roger Chillingworth acted like a doctor because he wanted to help Dimmesdale get better. _____

d) While Hester was holding him, Dimmesdale died in her arms on the high wooden floor. _____

e) At the end of the story, the people in the town still treated Hester badly and hated her. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What did Hester do to get money while she lived alone with Pearl?

a) She made beautiful clothes for people.

b) She acted like a doctor in the town.

c) She gave powerful speeches in the church.

2. Who was the angriest man in the town?

a) Arthur Dimmesdale

b) Roger Chillingworth

c) The town leader

3. What did Hester do when she met Dimmesdale in the dark forest?

a) She cried and ran away from him.

b) She asked the town leader for help.

c) She took off the red letter and felt free.

4. Why did Pearl start to cry in the forest?

a) Because she didn't know her mother without the letter.

b) Because Chillingworth found them and hurt her.

c) Because she wanted to go back to the small town.

5. What happened to Pearl at the end of the story?

a) She grew up, became rich, and had a happy life.

b) She stayed in the small town and made beautiful clothes.

c) She became the most important woman in the church.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) The people in the town had very strict _____ and punished bad people.

b) Hester had to stand on a high wooden _____ in the middle of the town.

c) Chillingworth acted like a _____ to get close to Dimmesdale and find his secret.

d) Hester met Dimmesdale in the dark _____ because no one could see them there.

e) Before he died, Chillingworth left all his _____ to Pearl.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Hester was a young woman who lived in a very big city. She had a rich husband named Arthur Dimmesdale, and they lived together in a beautiful house. One day, Hester found a red letter on the street and decided to wear it on her dress because it was very pretty. The people in the town loved her new clothes and gave her a lot of money. Roger Chillingworth was a kind doctor who helped the poor people in the city. At the end of the story, Hester and her daughter Pearl traveled to a different country and opened a large hospital to help sick children.

b) Roger Chillingworth was a young and smart church man who loved a beautiful woman named Pearl. They lived in a dark forest because the town leader was very angry with them and made strict rules. One day, a bad man named Dimmesdale arrived and tried to steal their money and their small house. Hester was a brave police officer who caught Dimmesdale and sent him to a terrible prison for many years. After that, Pearl became the most important woman in the town and gave a powerful speech on a high wooden floor. Finally, everyone lived happily without any problems.

c) Hester lived in a town with strict rules and had to wear a red letter "A" because she had a baby named Pearl without a husband. The baby's father was a church man named Dimmesdale, but he was afraid and kept his secret. Hester's husband, Roger Chillingworth, came back and acted like a doctor to discover the father and hurt him. After Hester and Dimmesdale met in the forest, Dimmesdale finally told the truth to the town on a high wooden floor and died. Pearl became rich, and Hester later returned to the town to help other women and became very respected.

STORY 21: MY FAMILY AND OTHER ANIMALS

by Gerald Durrell

In 1935, a ten-year-old boy named Gerald moved to a Greek island. The island was Corfu. He moved there with his family. The family included his mother, his older brother Larry, his brother Leslie, his sister Margo, and their dog. They left England because the cold weather made them unhappy. Corfu was sunny and warm. Gerald loved animals. The island was full of insects and birds. He thought, "I have to study them all!"

The family rented a small, white house. It had a nice garden. The house was old, but Gerald thought it was perfect. His room had a balcony. He could watch small lizards on the rocks.

Larry liked writing. He complained about the noise from the frogs and bugs. Leslie loved guns. He often practiced shooting in the garden. Margo spent hours in the sun. She worried about her skin. Their mother tried to keep everyone happy, but it was not easy.

Gerald explored the island every day. He carried a net and glass jars. One morning, he found a baby owl in a tree. He took it home and named it Ulysses. The owl lived in his bedroom. It flew around at night. Larry was angry. He shouted, "This bird must go!" But Gerald didn't care. He loved his new friend.

One day, Gerald met a man named Theodore. Theodore was a scientist. He knew a lot about plants and animals. He looked at Gerald and said, "I can teach you about the animals." Theodore gave him a special glass

to see very small things. Gerald spent hours looking at tiny bugs and plants.

The family soon moved to a bigger house. The new house had a large garden with fruit trees. Gerald filled his room with animals. He had slow, green animals with hard shells. He had snakes in boxes. His family didn't like sharing the house with so many animals. One night, a bat flew into Margo's hair. She screamed, "You should put these animals outside!" Another time, while Leslie was cleaning his gun, he shot a hole in the kitchen wall by mistake.

Gerald's biggest problem was his brothers and sister. Larry invited his friends to visit. They argued at the dinner table. Margo fell in love with a boy from another country, but the boy left after a week. Leslie tried to build a small boat. But he forgot to paint it well, so it sank in the water. Their mother stayed calm. She made endless cups of tea for everyone.

Gerald found a baby bird with a broken wing. He helped it get better. The bird learned to talk. It stole shiny things from the family. Once, while Larry was writing, the bird took his pen. Larry chased it around the garden.

One winter, it rained heavily. Water came into the house. The family had to stay in a hotel. Gerald brought his favorite animals with him. The hotel manager was very angry. But Gerald's mother smiled. She said, "Animals are part of our family."

One summer day, Larry decided to have a big party. He invited important people. Gerald's mother worked hard to prepare food. But everything went wrong. Leslie shot fireworks. The fireworks scared the guests. Margo's dress caught fire! And the owl stole a lady's necklace. The party ended early. But everyone laughed about it later.

Gerald's love for animals grew. He drew pictures of everything. He thought, "If I study hard, I will be able to have my own zoo one day."

After five years, a big war started. The family had to leave Corfu. Gerald was sad to leave his animal friends. He gave his birds to a kind neighbor. He opened his boxes and let the other animals go into the trees.

On the boat back to England, Gerald watched Corfu disappear. He remembered the sunny days and the animals. His family argued nearby, but Gerald smiled. He thought, "I have never been so happy."

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Gerald moved to a sunny and warm Greek island called Corfu with his family. _____

b) Larry loved animals and always wanted to keep the baby owl in his bedroom. _____

c) Theodore was a scientist who taught Gerald about plants and animals. _____

d) While Leslie was cleaning his gun, he shot a hole in the kitchen wall by mistake. _____

e) The family stayed in Corfu forever and never went back to England. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Why did Gerald's family leave England in 1935?

a) Because they wanted to buy a big hotel.

b) Because the cold weather made them unhappy.

c) Because Larry wanted to write a book about animals.

2. What happened while Larry was writing?

a) A bat flew into his hair.

b) A baby owl stole a lady's necklace.

c) A bird took his pen and he chased it.

3. Who was Theodore?

a) A hotel manager who was very angry with Gerald.

b) A boy from another country who loved Margo.

c) A kind scientist who knew a lot about plants and animals.

4. What did the family do when it rained heavily one winter?

a) They had to stay in a hotel.

b) They built a small boat and sailed away.

c) They opened their boxes and let the animals go.

5. Why did the family leave Corfu after five years?

a) Because a big war started.

b) Because Margo's dress caught fire.

c) Because they didn't like the sunny weather anymore.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) The family left England because the cold weather made them _____.

b) Gerald found a baby owl in a tree, took it home, and named it _____.

c) While Leslie was cleaning his gun, he shot a hole in the kitchen wall by _____.

d) Gerald thought that if he studied hard, he would be able to have his own _____ one day.

e) On the boat back to England, Gerald watched Corfu _____.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Gerald was a ten-year-old boy who lived alone on a cold island because he didn't like his family. He wanted to be a famous writer like his brother Larry, but he never had a pen or paper. One day, a scientist named Theodore visited him and gave him a gun to shoot small birds in the garden. Gerald was very angry and chased Theodore to a big hotel in the city. At the end of the story, Gerald built a small boat and sailed to England to buy a new house without any animals or insects.

b) In 1935, Gerald moved to a sunny Greek island called Corfu with his family to escape the cold English weather. Gerald loved animals and spent his days exploring the island to find bugs, birds, and other creatures. He met a kind scientist named Theodore who taught him many interesting things about nature. Gerald's family was very different: Larry loved writing, Leslie loved guns, and Margo worried about her skin. They had many funny and crazy moments with Gerald's animals, but after five years, a big war started and they had to return to England.

c) In 1935, Larry and Margo moved to a Greek island to open a big hotel for rich people from England. They invited a famous scientist named Theodore to teach them how to cook exotic food for their important guests. Gerald was a very bad boy who always stole shiny necklaces and threw fireworks at the dinner table. One summer, a big storm destroyed their beautiful hotel,

and all the guests ran away to a different country. Finally, the family bought a huge zoo and lived happily with many slow, green animals forever.

STORY 22: THE LATHE OF HEAVEN

by Ursula K. Le Guin

George was a normal man. He lived in Portland, Oregon. The world was full of troubles. The weather was very bad. It rained all the time, and it was very hot. The cities were full of people. People didn't have enough food or clean water. There were wars in many countries. Everyone was afraid.

George had a big secret. He had a special power. His dreams changed the world! He didn't want to do this. When he woke up, the world was different. But only George remembered the old world. He was scared. He thought, "I do not want this power! I must stop dreaming."

One night, George had a very bad dream. He dreamed about a world without war. When he woke up, the news on TV was different. The news reporter said, "There are no wars!" People were confused. They didn't remember the wars. George knew the truth. He thought, "This is my fault!" He decided to get help. A judge looked at George and said, "You have to visit a doctor." The doctor's name was Dr. Haber. He was a special doctor for the mind.

Dr. Haber worked in a tall building. He had a friendly smile, but George didn't trust him. George explained his problem. Dr. Haber didn’t believe him. He thought, "George is crazy." But the doctor wanted to test him. He had a big metal machine. The machine made people sleep. Dr. Haber said, "You must sleep. You have to dream

about a world with fewer people." George didn’t want to do it, but the machine made him sleep.

In his dream, George saw a terrible sickness. The sickness killed millions of people. When he woke up, the room was quiet. Dr. Haber looked shocked. There were fewer people in the world now. But everyone acted normal. Only George and Dr. Haber remembered the old world. Dr. Haber was very excited. He realized the truth. He thought, "George’s power is real! We can fix the world!"

George didn't like Dr. Haber’s plan. George said, "Changing the world is dangerous!" But Dr. Haber said, "You have to come back every week." In the next meeting, Dr. Haber said, "You must dream about peace!" George fell asleep. He dreamed of creatures from space. They came to Earth. They looked like giant turtles with green eyes. They forced humans to stop fighting. When George woke up, the space creatures were real. They lived in the oceans. They controlled human actions. If a person had bad thoughts, the space creatures punished them. People accepted this. But George thought, "This is wrong!"

Dr. Haber was happy with the changes. He became famous. He built a bigger machine and moved to a larger office. George tried to stay away from him. But Dr. Haber said, "You must not leave! You have to keep coming." In the next meeting, Dr. Haber said, "Dream about better weather!" George dreamed of the moon. The moon moved very close to Earth. When he woke up, the moon was huge in the sky. The moon caused massive floods in the oceans. Cities near the water were

destroyed. Dr. Haber was angry. He shouted, "You didn't follow my rules!"

George felt trapped. He didn’t want to change the world anymore. Dr. Haber said, "If you stop, I will send you to prison!" In their last meeting, Dr. Haber said, "You must dream of a perfect world!" George fell asleep. He dreamed of a place with no problems. But when he woke up, everything was gray and quiet. People had no feelings. They walked like robots. The world felt empty. Dr. Haber screamed, "What did you do? Please fix it!"

George closed his eyes and dreamed one last time. He didn’t listen to Dr. Haber. He dreamed of a world without Dr. Haber's machine. When he woke up, the machine was gone. Dr. Haber was a normal doctor again. He didn't remember anything. The moon was back in its normal place. The space creatures were gone. The world had its old problems again. But George was happy. He thought, "A real, broken world is better than a fake, perfect world."

George moved to a small apartment. He found a job painting houses. He tried to stay awake. Sometimes he met people. These people remembered small pieces of the old worlds. They remembered the space creatures or the floods. But no one talked about it. The world was still full of people and troubles. But George accepted it. He learned a big lesson. He thought, "We must not try to control everything. It only causes more pain."

Years later, George lived a quiet life. He stayed away from doctors and machines. He thought, "I hope no one will ever discover my power again." The world was not perfect, but it was real.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) George had a special power that changed the world when he dreamed. _____

b) Dr. Haber believed George immediately and didn't want to use his power. _____

c) The space creatures looked like giant turtles with green eyes and punished people with bad thoughts. _____

d) When George dreamed about better weather, the sun became very small and cold. _____

e) At the end of the story, George lived a quiet life and worked painting houses. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What happened when George dreamed about a world with fewer people?

a) A terrible sickness killed millions of people.

b) The moon moved very close to Earth.

c) A group of space creatures took people away.

2. Who told George to visit a doctor for his mind?

a) A news reporter

b) A judge

c) Giant turtles

3. Why was Dr. Haber happy with the changes at first?

a) Because he wanted to live in the ocean with the turtles.

b) Because he lost his big metal machine.

c) Because he became famous and moved to a larger office.

4. What did the people look like when George dreamed of a perfect world?

a) They looked like robots with no feelings.

b) They looked like giant space creatures.

c) They looked very angry and started a new war.

5. What did George think at the end of the story?

a) "I must find a new doctor to help me dream."

b) "A real, broken world is better than a fake, perfect world."

c) "I want to control everything and be the leader of the world."

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Dr. Haber had a big metal _____ that made people sleep.

b) George dreamed of creatures from space that looked like giant _____.

c) The moon moved very close to Earth and caused massive _____ in the oceans.

d) Dr. Haber said, "If you stop, I will send you to _____!"

e) At the end of the story, George found a new job _____ houses.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) George was a normal man with a dangerous secret: his dreams changed the real world. He visited a mind doctor named Dr. Haber, who used a machine to make George dream and change things. Dr. Haber wanted a perfect world, but the dreams caused terrible things like sickness, giant space turtles, and huge floods. Dr. Haber became powerful and famous, but George felt trapped and afraid. Finally, George dreamed a world without the machine, and the old, broken world came back. George was happy to live a quiet life because a real world is better than a fake one.

b) George was a rich doctor who lived in a perfect world without any wars or problems. One day, he built a big metal machine to help people sleep better at night. His best friend, Dr. Haber, was a space creature that looked like a giant green turtle. They traveled to the moon together to find clean water for the city of Portland. At the end of the story, George became the leader of the space creatures and forced all the humans to paint their houses. Everyone was very happy and never had bad dreams again.

c) George was a news reporter who loved to talk about the bad weather and the terrible sicknesses in the world. He met a judge named Dr. Haber, who wanted to put George in a dark prison because he had no money. While George was sleeping in the prison, he dreamed of a beautiful new city with millions of happy people. Dr. Haber was very angry about this dream and decided to destroy the moon with a massive flood. Finally, George woke up, bought a big house near the ocean, and lived alone as a robot with no feelings.

STORY 23: TO SAY NOTHING OF THE DOG

by Connie Willis

In the future, scientists discovered how to travel through time. They used this machine to study history. But they had strict rules. A time traveler could not change the past. A time traveler must not take objects to the future. A man named Ned worked as a time traveler for a university. He was very tired. He traveled to the past too many times. He thought, "I have never been so tired!" But his boss, Mr. Dunworthy, said, "You have to go to England in the year 1888!" Ned's job was to fix a big mistake. Another time traveler made this mistake.

The mistake was about a strange object. People called it the “bishop’s bird stump.” A rich woman named Lady Schrapnell wanted to build an old church. She said, "I must have the bird stump!" No one knew the location of the bird stump. Time travelers searched the past for clues. A woman named Verity searched for the bird stump. She was another time traveler. While she was searching, she accidentally changed history. Ned thought, "I have to find Verity. I must stop the change!"

Ned arrived in England in 1888. He felt sick and confused. He wore old clothes. But he forgot many rules about polite manners. He traveled by boat on a river and met a man named Terence. Terence said, "Please stay at my house!" Ned accepted. He needed a place to rest. At the house, Ned found Verity. She acted like an old-fashioned lady. But she was really the time traveler.

Verity said, "I have a big problem!" While she was looking for the bird stump, she saved a cat from the water. But saving the cat changed history. In the future, there were no cats. So, helping one could cause big problems. Verity said, "I must put the cat back in the water!" She also talked about a dog named Cyril. Cyril followed her everywhere. Cyril belonged to Terence. But Cyril was a very bad dog. He stole food and chased cats.

Ned and Verity decided to work together. They thought, "We have to return the cat to its owner. And we must find the bird stump." But England in 1888 was very difficult. The rules for people were strict. Ned kept making mistakes. He didn't know how to talk to workers or how to dance at parties. Verity helped him, but it was not easy. She was better than Ned at acting.

Meanwhile, Terence fell in love with a woman named Tossie. Tossie believed in ghosts. She looked at the dog and thought, "Cyril is a magical animal!" Tossie's mother was Lady Mering. She said, "Tossie must marry a rich man!" But Tossie preferred Terence. Ned and Verity worried about this love. They thought, "This love can change history too!" They had to make sure everything happened the right way.

One day, Ned and Verity took the cat to a nearby village. They met an old woman. The old woman looked at the cat and said, "This cat belongs to a sailor's wife! But the sailor died in a boat accident." The cat was important for the future. So, Verity had to put the cat back near the river. Ned didn't like this plan. But Verity said, "We have to do it." They left the cat by the river. They hoped the right person could find it.

Back at the house, Cyril the dog caused more trouble. He destroyed flowers in the garden. He ate a guest's hat and barked all night. Terence said, "I must give this dog away!" But Tossie loved the dog. Ned and Verity realized a secret. Cyril was a clue for the bird stump! They found an old book. The book read, "The bird stump was in this house many years ago." They searched everywhere, but they found nothing.

Then, at a garden party, Ned met a teacher. His name was Professor Peddick. The professor studied old wars. He talked endlessly about historical battles. Ned asked, "Do you know about the bird stump?" But the professor only wanted to talk about war. Ned felt sad but kept smiling.

That night, Ned and Verity saw a man in the house. They followed him to the book room. The man took a book from the shelf. The man was Mr. C. He worked for Professor Peddick. He was searching for the bird stump too! Ned said, "Stop!" But Mr. C ran away. They chased him through the garden. But Cyril the dog tripped Ned. Mr. C escaped.

The next morning, Lady Mering said, "We are taking a trip to the city of Coventry!" She wanted Tossie to meet a rich man there. Ned and Verity joined the trip. They thought, "The bird stump might be there!" On the train, Cyril chewed Lady Mering's bags. Tossie cried. She missed Terence. Ned felt sorry for everyone.

In Coventry, the group visited the big church. But it was closed for repairs. Ned and Verity went inside quietly. They found a dark room full of old objects. They saw the bishop's bird stump! It was an ugly

vase with carved birds and flowers. Ned thought, "I have never seen an uglier vase!" They tried to take it, but a guard caught them. Verity pretended to fall asleep. This tricked the guard. Ned hid the bird stump under his coat.

When they returned to the house, Ned and Verity argued. Verity said, "We must take the bird stump to the future now!" But Ned said, "No, we have to wait." They hid the bird stump in a cupboard. They decided to focus on the cat and Cyril.

The next day, Terence and Tossie decided to marry. Lady Mering was angry at first. But Terence said, "I will become a rich man!" Lady Mering agreed. Ned and Verity were happy. This marriage was part of true history. They thought, "Our job is almost finished!"

Before leaving, Verity gave Cyril to Terence. She made sure the cat was safe. Ned gave the bird stump to a worker. Ned said, "You must keep it safe for Lady Schrapnell!" Then Ned and Verity traveled back to the future.

In the future, Mr. Dunworthy was angry. He said, "You broke many rules!" But Lady Schrapnell was very happy. She found the bishop’s bird stump. The timeline was safe. Ned finally rested. Verity continued her work as a time traveler.

Later, Ned and Verity met again. They laughed about their adventures in 1888. They became good friends. Cyril the dog became famous in history books. The bishop’s bird stump was in the new church. Ned

learned a lesson. He thought, "Time travel is very difficult. But working with friends makes everything easier."

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Time travelers had strict rules, and they must not take objects to the future. _____

b) Ned traveled to England in the year 1888 to find a strange object called the bishop's bird stump. _____

c) Verity accidentally changed history while she was searching for the bird stump because she saved a dog. _____

d) Ned and Verity found the bishop's bird stump in a dark room inside a big church in Coventry. _____

e) At the end of the story, Lady Schrapnell was very angry because Ned and Verity broke many rules. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What was Ned's problem at the beginning of the story?

a) He was very tired because he traveled to the past too many times.

b) He was very sick because he ate too many apples in 1888.

c) He wanted to marry Lady Schrapnell and buy a big church.

2. What did Cyril the dog do to cause trouble?

a) He built a time machine in the garden.

b) He stole food, chased cats, and destroyed flowers.

c) He gave a powerful speech about historical battles.

3. Why did Tossie's mother, Lady Mering, take a trip to the city of Coventry?

a) She wanted to find a magical cat near the river.

b) She wanted Tossie to meet a rich man there.

c) She wanted to work for Professor Peddick.

4. How did Verity trick the guard when he caught them taking the bird stump?

a) She pretended to fall asleep.

b) She gave him the ugly vase.

c) She asked Cyril the dog to bark loudly.

5. What happened to Terence and Tossie at the end of the trip to 1888?

a) They traveled back to the future with Ned.

b) They decided to marry, which was part of true history.

c) They lost the bishop's bird stump in a dark cupboard.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) A time traveler could not change the past, and they _____ not take objects to the future.

b) Ned felt sick and confused, and he forgot many rules about polite _____.

c) Verity helped Ned, and she was _____ than him at acting.

d) Ned asked Professor Peddick about the bird stump, but the professor only wanted to talk about _____.

e) The bishop's bird stump was an ugly _____ with carved birds and flowers.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Ned was a tired time traveler who had to go to England in 1888 to fix a big mistake and find an object called the bishop's bird stump. He met another time traveler named Verity, who accidentally changed history by saving a cat from the water. They worked together to fix the timeline, but it was difficult because of the strict rules and a very bad dog named Cyril. Finally, they found the ugly bird stump in a church in Coventry, made sure a couple named Terence and Tossie got married, and returned to the future to give the object to Lady Schrapnell.

b) In the future, a rich woman named Lady Schrapnell built a time machine to travel to 1888 and marry a handsome sailor. She brought her magical dog, Cyril, who chased all the cats in England and changed history forever. Two angry police officers, Ned and Verity, followed her to a big church in Coventry to stop her. While Lady Schrapnell was sleeping in a dark room, Ned stole her beautiful vase and threw it into the river. The police officers became famous in the history books and never allowed anyone to travel through time again.

c) Ned was a normal man who lived in Coventry and worked in a very old church. One day, he found a strange object called the bishop's bird stump in his garden and decided to sell it to a rich woman named Verity. Verity was a time traveler from the future who wanted to take the bird stump back home, but she had to follow strict rules. While they were traveling on a boat, a dog named Cyril ate the bird stump and ran away to the city. Ned and Verity spent the rest of their lives looking for the dog in the past.

STORY 24: ALL THE BIRDS IN THE SKY

by Charlie Jane Anders

Patricia was a lonely girl. When she was six years old, she learned she could talk to animals. One day, a small bird with a broken wing spoke to her. The bird told her to go to the forest. Patricia walked into the forest and found a magical tree. The tree said, "You are a witch!" When Patricia told her parents about her experience, they did not believe her. They thought she was crazy, so they sent her to a strict school.

Near Patricia's town lived a boy named Laurence. He loved science and machines, and he made small robots on the desk in his bedroom. The other children were unkind to him because he was shy and liked unusual things. His parents were worried about him. They wanted him to play sports, but he did not like sports. He preferred to hide in the library and read books about science.

One day, Patricia and Laurence met at school. Patricia was crying because the other children were laughing at her. Laurence sat next to her, and he showed her a tiny robot. It could walk and move its arms. Patricia smiled, and she used magic to make the robot dance. They became friends. They promised to keep their secrets.

But their friendship did not last long. Patricia's parents sent her to a special school. The school was in the mountains. It was cold and scary, and the teachers were very strict. They taught Patricia about magic, but she missed her old life. Laurence's parents sent him to a science

school. He learned to build bigger machines, but he felt lonely without Patricia.

Many years later, the two friends met again in a big city. Patricia was now a young witch, and she used her magic for kind things. She found lost keys and cured headaches. Laurence worked for a big computer company that wanted to control the bad weather with machines. The two friends were very happy to see each other. They decided to drink coffee together. "My magic can help people!" Patricia said. "I am building a big machine!" Laurence said. Soon they started to argue because they believed in different things. Patricia believed that magic could save the world, and Laurence thought only science could do it.

One night, the birds warned Patricia about a terrible danger that was coming. She tried to warn everyone, but no one believed her. At the same time, Laurence's company continued building the big machine. They called it the Jump-Start Engine. He believed his invention was the answer, but Patricia was afraid it was too dangerous for nature.

After that, Patricia and Laurence stopped talking. They were very angry. Patricia joined a group of witches who wanted to protect the Earth with magic, and Laurence kept working on his machine. The world became a very strange place. Snow fell in summer, big storms destroyed cities, animals acted strangely, and some plants grew too fast.

Then one day, some birds talked to Patricia. They told her the world was in great danger. Patricia decided to talk to Laurence. "You must

stop your project!" she said. Laurence wanted to finish his machine because he did not trust magic. Patricia felt sad and left.

That night, the weather became even worse. Big winds hit the city, and fires burned the forests. The witches tried to use magic to stop the storms, but it was not enough. When Laurence's machine finally started working, the ground began to shake. People were scared, and they did not know where to go or what to do. Finally, Patricia and Laurence understood they had to work together.

Patricia talked to the planet. "Humans have hurt me too much," the Earth said. Then, Laurence decided to change his machine to make it work with nature. Together, Laurence and Patricia joined science and magic to save everyone.

In the end, the bad weather and strange things stopped. The world was a different place now. The storms destroyed many cities, and many people had to start new lives. Patricia and Laurence remained friends. They decided to keep working together to heal the planet.

Many years passed. Patricia lived in a small village, where she taught the children to respect nature. Laurence traveled around the world, fixing machines and planting trees. Sometimes they met to talk about their adventures, and to remember the time when they saved the planet.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Patricia learned a secret that she could talk to animals when she was six years old. _____

b) Laurence's parents were very happy because he loved machines and science. _____

c) Laurence used magic to make the tiny robot dance when he met Patricia at school. _____

d) Laurence’s big machine, the Jump-Start Engine, was built to fix the weather. _____

e) At the end of the story, Patricia and Laurence realized that magic and science must work together to save the world. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What did the magical tree in the forest say to Patricia?

a) "You have to play sports!"

b) "You are a witch!"

c) "You must build a machine!"

2. Where did Laurence often hide because he hated sports?

a) In the library reading books about science.

b) In the mountains at a special school for witches.

c) In a big computer company fixing the weather.

3. How did Patricia and Laurence help the world at the end of the story

a) They fought each other until the storms stopped naturally.

b) They destroyed the Jump-Start Engine and went to a dark forest.

c) They combined magic and science to fix the weather and nature.

4. What happened while Laurence was working on his big machine?

a) Animals started talking to Laurence about the future.

b) Patricia forgot all her magic and moved to the city.

c) The weather became wild, and snow fell in summer.

5. What did Patricia teach children in her small village years later?

a) To respect nature.

b) To build robots in their bedrooms.

c) To read books about big computer companies.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Patricia walked into the forest and found a magical _____.

b) Laurence showed Patricia a tiny robot that could walk and move its _____.

c) Patricia went to a special school for witches in the _____.

d) Laurence's company built a huge machine called the Jump-Start _____.

e) Laurence traveled the world to fix machines and plant _____.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Patricia was a young girl who hated animals and wanted to build big computers in her bedroom. She met Laurence, a famous witch who lived in a magical forest and talked to trees. They never went to school because they only wanted to play sports all day long in the city. One day, the weather became very hot, so Laurence built a small robot to bring them cold water. Patricia used her science skills to destroy all the trees and mountains. At the end of the story, they fought a big war against the birds and never spoke to each other again.

b) Patricia was a young girl who learned she could talk to animals and use magic to help people. Laurence was a quiet boy who loved science and building small robots. They became friends at

school, but their parents sent them to different places to study. Years later, they met in a big city when the world was in terrible danger because of wild storms and bad weather. Patricia wanted to use magic to protect nature, and Laurence wanted to use his big machine to fix the sky. Finally, they worked together, combined magic and science, and saved the planet.

c) Laurence was a young bird that lived in a magical tree in the tall mountains. He wanted to learn how to fly, but a strict witch named Patricia put him in a small glass jar. Patricia was a very mean girl who only cared about playing sports with her rich friends at the science school. She forced Laurence to build a huge machine to burn all the forests and destroy the small cities. When the big danger arrived, they ran away to a different planet using a magical Jump-Start Engine. The Earth was completely destroyed, and no humans or animals ever lived there again.

STORY 25: HOWL'S MOVING CASTLE

by Diana Wynne Jones

Sophie lived in a small town. She was the oldest of three sisters. People said, "The oldest child never finds success!" Sophie believed this. She worked quietly in her dead father's hat shop. While she was making hats, she talked to them. She thought, "I will never have an adventure."

Then one day, a bad witch visited the shop. She was the Witch of the Waste. The witch was angry at Sophie's sister. But Sophie was there. The witch used dark magic on Sophie. She changed Sophie into an old woman! Sophie's hair turned gray, and her body hurt. She looked older than anyone in town.

Sophie knew a sad truth. She thought, "I cannot stay in this town." She packed a few things and left. She walked into the hills. She found a strange moving castle. The castle belonged to Wizard Howl. People said, "He is a very dangerous man! He eats the hearts of young girls!" Sophie didn't care. She was old now. She climbed into the castle through the door.

Inside, Sophie met a magical fire. His name was Calcifer. Calcifer lived in the fireplace. He made the castle move. He said, "I have a magical promise with Howl. You must break this promise! Then, I can change you back into a young girl." Sophie agreed. But she didn't know how to do it. She decided to stay in the castle. She thought, "I have to clean this place. It is very dirty!"

Soon, Wizard Howl came home. He was young and handsome, but he was very lazy. He wore beautiful clothes. He complained when Sophie cleaned his room. Howl had a helper named Michael. Michael was a kind boy. He helped Howl with magic. Sophie learned a secret. Howl was hiding from the Witch and the King. The King said, "Howl, you must find my missing brother! You have to stop the war!" But Howl didn't want to help.

Sophie cooked and cleaned for the boys and the fire. She said, "I am your new grandmother!" Howl was often rude, but Sophie was strict. She shouted at him like a real grandmother. She thought, "He is very silly." She discovered his secrets. When Howl was sad, he changed his hair color. He also used magic to make girls love him.

One day, the Witch of the Waste found the castle. She wanted Howl's magic. She sent a scary scarecrow to attack them. Sophie hit the scarecrow with a broom, and it ran away. Howl was surprised. He said, "The Witch wants to kill me!" Sophie decided to help Howl.

Sophie found a magic paper in Howl's room. She used it accidentally. The castle flew to Howl's old home in Wales. Sophie saw a different world. She saw metal cars and tall buildings. Howl followed her. He said, "I can travel between different worlds." Sophie realized the truth. Howl was not a bad man. He was just afraid.

Back in their own world, the King's men came to the castle. They shouted, "Howl, you must find the prince!" Howl said no. The men said, "Then we will take your castle!" Sophie acted like Howl's

mother. She yelled at the men and scared them away. Howl thanked her. But he still didn't help the King.

Sophie found another secret. The missing prince and another missing wizard were the same person! The Witch used magic on the man. She turned him into a dog. The dog followed Sophie to the castle. Sophie helped the dog, and they became friends. Meanwhile, Howl started acting strange. He hid in his room. He turned into a monster with black feathers! Sophie thought, "The Witch's dark magic is hurting him too!"

The Witch attacked the castle again. She took Calcifer and Michael away. Sophie and the dog went to the Witch’s castle. They wanted to save their friends. The Witch tried to take Howl’s heart. His heart was inside Calcifer’s fire! Sophie protected the fire and broke the Witch’s magic. She learned about the magical promise. Calcifer kept Howl’s heart safe, and Howl kept Calcifer alive.

Sophie took Howl’s heart. She put the heart back inside his chest. Howl woke up and fought the Witch. Sophie used her own magic to stop the Witch forever. She didn't know about her magic before this day! Calcifer was free now, but he wanted to stay. He said, "I will stay with you!" The prince returned to the King, and the war ended.

The dark magic broke. Sophie became young again. But she didn’t care about her age. She understood her power. She used her words to put magic into hats and things! Howl looked at her and said, "Please stay in the castle." She agreed. They became a happy family with Michael and Calcifer.

The moving castle stopped. Sophie visited her sisters. Her sisters were very proud of her bravery. Howl stopped running away from his problems. He became a better wizard. In the end, Sophie learned a big lesson. She thought, "Life is not about age. You must be brave, help others, and find your own magic."

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Sophie was changed into an old woman by the Witch of the Waste. _____

b) Wizard Howl was an old, ugly man who loved to clean his castle. _____

c) Calcifer was a magical fire who lived in the fireplace and made the castle move. _____

d) The Witch of the Waste wanted to help Howl find the missing prince. _____

e) At the end of the story, Sophie learned that life is about age, not bravery. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What did Sophie do after the witch turned her into an old woman?

a) She asked the King for help.

b) She left her town and found a strange moving castle.

c) She stayed in the hat shop and cried.

2. Who was Michael in the story?

a) A scared dog that followed Sophie.

b) The King's missing brother.

c) A kind boy who helped Howl with magic.

3. What did Howl do when he was sad?

a) He changed his hair color.

b) He attacked the scary scarecrow.

c) He cleaned the whole castle.

4. Where did Sophie accidentally fly the castle using a magic paper?

a) To the Witch of the Waste's dark room.

b) To Howl's old home in Wales.

c) To the King's palace.

5. Where was Howl's heart?

a) Inside a metal car.

b) Hidden in a black feather.

c) Inside Calcifer's fire.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) The witch used dark _____ on Sophie and changed her into an old woman.

b) Calcifer made the castle _____ and lived in the fireplace.

c) Howl was young and handsome, but he was very _____.

d) Sophie hit the scary _____ with a broom, and it ran away.

e) Sophie used her words to put magic into _____ and things.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Sophie was a young girl who lived in a large castle with her three sisters. She was a bad witch who loved to use dark magic on the people in her town. One day, a brave wizard named Howl arrived and turned Sophie into a small black dog to teach her a lesson. Sophie ran away to Wales, where she met a magical fire named Michael. Michael helped her build a new metal car so she could drive back to the King. In the end, Sophie stayed a dog forever

and never saw her family again, but she was very happy because she loved to eat hats.

b) The King wanted to find his missing brother, so he sent an old woman named Sophie to a tall building in Wales. Sophie was a very lazy worker who hated cleaning and cooking. When she found Wizard Howl, he was a scary monster with black feathers who ate the hearts of young girls. Howl and his helper Calcifer stole Sophie's hat shop and threw it into the ocean. Sophie had to fight the King with a broom to get her shop back. Finally, she broke the magical promise, turned Howl into a scarecrow, and became the new King of the town.

c) Sophie was a quiet girl who worked in a hat shop until a bad witch turned her into an old woman. She left her town and found a strange moving castle that belonged to a lazy but handsome wizard named Howl. Inside, she met a magical fire named Calcifer and a kind boy named Michael. Sophie stayed to clean the dirty castle and act like Howl's grandmother. Later, she discovered Howl's secrets, helped him hide from the King, and fought the Witch of the Waste. In the end, Sophie broke the dark magic, saved Howl's heart, became young again, and stayed happily in the castle with her new family.

STORY 26: THE FIFTH SACRED THING

by Starhawk

In the year 2048, the world changed a lot. In the north of California, people built a green and peaceful city. They called it the Sanctuary. The people there loved four special things: earth, air, fire, and water. They said, “No one can own these things. They belong to everyone.” The Sanctuary had beautiful gardens and clean rivers. The houses used the sun for power. People worked together and shared food. They celebrated nature.

Far to the south, there was another city. People called it the Steel City. The bosses there wanted power. They had strict rules and big armies. They had bad machines. The machines made the land dirty.

One day, the bosses of the Steel City decided to attack the Sanctuary. They thought, "We must take their water and land!" The people of the Sanctuary didn't like fighting. They loved peace and magic. But they knew the truth. They thought, "We have to protect our home." They made plans. Some people used plants to make sick people better. Other people learned to talk to animals. Everyone worked hard together.

A young woman named Maya lived in the Sanctuary. She had a special power. She could see the future in her dreams. One night, while she was sleeping, she dreamed of soldiers. The soldiers were walking toward their city. She woke up and looked at her people. She said, "I dreamed of soldiers! They are coming!"

The older people decided to send men to watch the edges of the city. One man was named Bird. He was very brave. He could move quietly like the wind. Bird and his friends went south. They saw the Steel City's army. The soldiers had guns and big metal cars. Bird ran back quickly. He shouted, "The army is here!"

When the army arrived, the people of the Sanctuary stood outside the city doors. They didn't have guns. Instead, they held flowers and sang songs. They gave food to the soldiers. The soldiers were confused. Their boss, General Green, shouted, "Stop singing, or we will destroy you!" But the people kept singing. Some soldiers felt bad and put their guns down.

General Green became angrier than before. He ordered his men to attack. The soldiers started shooting. But the people of the Sanctuary used magic. They made a thick white cloud appear. The soldiers could not see. The people said, "Earth, please shake!" The ground shook, and the soldiers fell down. Birds flew down to hit the soldiers' hats. The people stayed calm and sang.

Maya used her magic to help her people. She looked at General Green. She thought, "He is not a bad man. He is just afraid." She said to the older people, "We must show him kindness." They agreed.

They invited General Green to talk. He came alone to the Sanctuary. The people gave him hot tea and bread. They showed him their gardens. General Green listened. But he said, "Your magic is weak! Power is the only truth."

That night, Maya had another dream. She saw the fifth special thing. It was the spirit of all life. She understood a big lesson. She thought, "The real fight is with hearts, not guns." She said to her people, “We have to help them remember love.”

The next day, the people of the Sanctuary did something surprising. They opened the doors. They let the soldiers enter. They said, "We can teach you to grow food and live in peace." Some soldiers laughed, but others listened. A young soldier named Luis stepped forward. He said, “I learned to grow food before the war. I miss it.” The people welcomed him.

General Green saw his soldiers. He felt angry and scared. He shouted, “Do not listen to them! You must not trust them!” But his soldiers didn't listen. One by one, they put down their guns. Luis looked at General Green. He said, “Sir, we are tired of fighting. We want to live.”

General Green’s heart was heavy. He thought about his dead family. He looked at the happy children in the Sanctuary. He remembered his daughter. Maya walked to him. She said softly, “You can choose a different life.” General Green cried. He thought, "I have never felt this sad." He ordered his army to leave.

Many soldiers left the Sanctuary, but Luis and others stayed. They helped fix the dirty land. They learned to respect the five special things. The people celebrated with music and dancing. Maya smiled. She saw a very bright future.

Years later, Maya was an old woman. She told stories about the great fight without guns. Children listened and learned a lesson. They learned that true strength comes from love and brave hearts. The fifth special thing, the spirit of life, reminded everyone that they were all part of one big family.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) The Sanctuary was a green and peaceful city in the north of California. _____

b) The people of the Sanctuary used guns and big metal cars to fight the army. _____

c) Maya had a special power to see the future in her dreams. _____

d) General Green was the boss of the Sanctuary who loved peace and magic. _____

e) At the end of the story, many soldiers put down their guns and chose a different life. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What were the four special things that the people of the Sanctuary loved?

a) Earth, air, fire, and water

b) Guns, machines, metal, and cars

c) Sun, moon, stars, and space

2. Where did the army with big machines and strict rules come from?

a) The green and peaceful city

b) The Steel City in the south

c) A small village in the mountains

3. How did the people of the Sanctuary fight the soldiers when they arrived?

a) They sang, held flowers, and used magic to make a white cloud.

b) They shot big guns and drove metal cars to scare them away.

c) They built a big wall of furniture in the street.

4. What was the fifth special thing that Maya saw in her dream?

a) A new weapon for the army

b) A magical bird from the forest

c) The spirit of all life

5. Who was Luis?

a) An old man who told stories about the great fight

b) A young soldier who wanted to stay and grow food

c) The angry boss of the Steel City

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) The Sanctuary had beautiful gardens and clean _____.

b) The people of the Sanctuary used the _____ for power.

c) Bird and his friends went south to watch the _____ of the Steel City.

d) Maya looked at General Green and said they must show him _____.

e) The fifth special thing reminded everyone that they were all part of one big _____.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) In 2048, the people of the Sanctuary lived in a peaceful, green city in California and loved the earth, air, fire, and water. A young woman named Maya dreamed that the angry army from the Steel City in the south was coming to attack them. When the soldiers arrived, the people of the Sanctuary did not use guns; instead, they sang songs, offered food, and used magic to protect

their home. General Green wanted to fight, but his soldiers, like a young man named Luis, were tired of war and put their weapons down. Maya taught them about the fifth special thing, the spirit of life, and the soldiers learned that true strength comes from love and peace.

b) In the year 2048, Maya was an angry general who lived in the Steel City. She wanted to steal all the water and land from the Sanctuary, a small village in the mountains. Maya built big metal cars and dangerous machines to destroy the green gardens and clean rivers. The people of the Sanctuary were very afraid, so they gave her all their food and ran away to the south. At the end of the story, Maya and her soldiers lived alone in the dirty land, and they never learned to grow food or share with other people in California.

c) Bird was a brave soldier from the Steel City who loved to use guns and fight in big wars. One day, he traveled to the north of California to visit a young woman named Maya. Maya was a rich boss who owned all the earth, air, fire, and water in the world. She used her magic to turn Bird and his army into small plants and birds. General Green was very happy about this because he hated the soldiers and wanted to build a peaceful city. Finally, everyone forgot about the fifth special thing and stopped singing songs forever.

STORY 27: SORCERER TO THE CROWN

by Zen Cho

A long time ago, there was magic in England. A young man named Zacharias became the top boss of all magicians. People called him the Sorcerer Royal. Zacharias was from Africa, and he had no parents. The old Sorcerer Royal raised him. Many magicians didn't trust Zacharias. They whispered, "He killed the old boss!" But Zacharias loved the old man like a father.

Magic in England was slowly going away. Magic words stopped working. Magical creatures became hard to find. Zacharias wanted to fix this problem, but other magicians said, "We will not help you! You are not a true leader." One day, Zacharias visited a school for girls. The law said, "Women must not use magic!" But the school taught them simple magic anyway. There, he met a smart girl named Prunella.

Prunella's father was an English magician. Her mother was from India. She helped the teachers at the school. But she had a big secret. She knew very strong magic. She found an old box. Her father left it for her. The box had seven magical stones and a dragon’s egg! Prunella thought, "I must not tell anyone. The teachers will take it!" When Zacharias visited, she showed him the egg. She said, "You have to help me!" Zacharias was very surprised. He had never seen a dragon egg before.

Zacharias invited Prunella to London. He wanted to teach her more about magic. Prunella agreed. She was excited to leave her boring life.

In London, Zacharias had many problems. The country's leaders said, "You must send magic to help our wars!" But he could not do it. The magic was going away. A group of bad magicians planned to fire him. At the same time, Prunella discovered her true power. She could do strong magic very easily! She practiced secretly. She helped Zacharias find a way to bring the magic back.

Then, they learned a terrible secret. Fairies were stealing England’s magic! Fairies lived in a magical land. Their queen was angry. She thought, "Humans are mean to my people. I will punish them!" Zacharias decided to visit the Fairy Queen to talk. Prunella said, "I must go with you!" It was dangerous, but they traveled to the magical land through a magic door.

The Fairy Queen was beautiful but mean. She looked at Zacharias and said, "Give me your magic stick!" When he said no, she locked them in her big house. Prunella used her magic to trick the fairies. They ran away! Before leaving, Prunella stole something special. She took a piece of the Fairy Queen’s hair. She thought, "This hair can help fix England’s magic."

Back in London, Zacharias and Prunella used the hair to make a magic drink. They hoped to fix the magic, but it didn’t work. Then, Prunella remembered her dragon’s egg. She and Zacharias took the egg to a quiet forest. A baby dragon came out of the egg! Suddenly, the magic became stronger. They realized the truth. Dragons could bring the magic back! But they needed more dragons.

But the Fairy Queen was very angry about her stolen hair. She sent a group of fairies to attack London. The fairies broke windows and scared people. Zacharias and Prunella fought them with magic. But the fairies were stronger than them. While they were fighting, the baby dragon flew away. Prunella cried, but Zacharias said, "We have to stop the Fairy Queen first!"

They returned to the magical land to fight the queen. This time, Prunella used her magical stones. She looked at the queen and said, "I will give you three stones. But you must stop the attacks!" The queen agreed. But she said, "Humans must not hurt my people anymore!" Zacharias promised to make new rules to protect magical creatures.

When they returned to England, Zacharias called a big meeting. All the magicians came. He said, "Women can now use magic openly!" The magicians argued and shouted. But Prunella showed her strong magic. She made a big storm inside the room! The magicians were afraid. They finally agreed.

Prunella became England’s first official female magician. She and Zacharias worked together. They found the baby dragon in the forest. It led them to other dragons in the mountains. While the dragons were returning, the magic grew stronger again. The country's leaders stopped causing problems. The magicians finally trusted Zacharias.

Prunella also discovered the truth about her father. He was a famous magician. He loved her mother. Her mother used magic to heal people in India. Her father left the box to protect Prunella. He thought, "My

enemies could hurt her." Prunella felt very proud. She decided to learn more about her mother’s magic.

In the end, Zacharias stayed the Sorcerer Royal. Prunella became his partner. They traveled the country together. They solved problems and helped people learn something. They said, "You should always respect magical creatures." Some magicians still disliked them, but most people thought they were very brave.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. **Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).**

a) Zacharias was the top boss of all magicians, but many magicians didn't trust him. _____

b) Prunella found an old box with seven magical stones and a fairy's hair inside. _____

c) The law in England said that women must not use magic. _____

d) Zacharias and Prunella traveled to a magical land because dragons were stealing England's magic. _____

e) At the big meeting, Prunella made a big storm inside the room to show her strong magic. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Where was Zacharias from originally?

a) India

b) Africa

c) London

2. What did Prunella steal from the Fairy Queen before they ran away?

a) A magical stone

b) A dragon's egg

c) A piece of hair

3. Who was stealing England's magic?

a) Fairies

b) Bad magicians in London

c) Magical creatures from the mountains

4. What happened when Zacharias and Prunella took the egg to a quiet forest?

a) A baby dragon came out of the egg.

b) The Fairy Queen attacked them.

c) The magic disappeared forever.

5. What did Zacharias say at the big meeting with all the magicians?

a) "We must send magic to help our wars!"

b) "Women can now use magic openly!"

c) "We must give all our magic to the fairies!"

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Zacharias loved the old man like a _____.

b) Prunella's mother used magic to heal people in _____.

c) The Fairy Queen was beautiful but _____.

d) Zacharias promised to make new rules to protect magical _____.

e) Prunella became England's first official _____ magician.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Zacharias was a bad magician from Africa who stole a magical box from a smart girl named Prunella. Prunella wanted to be the Sorcerer Royal, so she traveled to a magical land to fight the Fairy Queen alone. She used seven stones to destroy all the

magic in England. Zacharias ran away to India to find his parents, but the fairies caught him in a dark forest. In the end, there were no dragons or fairies left, and the country's leaders decided to close all the schools for girls.

b) Prunella lived in a big castle in London and was the Queen of the Fairies. She invited a young man named Zacharias to teach him how to use simple magic with a magic stick. Zacharias was very lazy and didn't want to protect the magical creatures in the mountains. One day, a baby dragon attacked the city, and Prunella had to use a magic drink to stop it. She fired Zacharias from his job, and the bad magicians became the new leaders of the country.

c) Zacharias was the Sorcerer Royal, but magic in England was slowly going away because the fairies were stealing it. He met a smart girl named Prunella, who had strong magic and a secret box with a dragon's egg. They traveled to a magical land, tricked the mean Fairy Queen, and discovered that dragons could bring the magic back. After a big fight with the fairies, Zacharias changed the rules so women could use magic openly. Prunella became the first female magician, and they worked together to help people and protect magical creatures.

STORY 28: A PSALM FOR THE WILD-BUILT

by Becky Chambers

Many years ago, robots woke up. They became smart. They left human cities. They wanted to live freely in the wild forests. Humans said, "We will never bother you!" The robots said, "We will return one day."

Hundreds of years later, humans lived peacefully with nature. A young man named Dex lived in this world. He decided to leave his old life. Dex worked as a tea monk. He traveled from village to village. He served hot tea, and he listened to people's problems. He rode a strong bicycle. The bicycle pulled a small wagon. The wagon carried tea, pots, and cups. Dex enjoyed helping others. But after many years, he felt bored. He thought, "I must find a bigger purpose in life."

One day, Dex said to a friend, "I have to do something new. I want to go to the wild places." His friend said, "You must not go there! The wild forests are dangerous." But Dex didn't change his mind. He packed extra food. He fixed his bicycle. He began a journey to the old, broken buildings in the mountains. People have not visited those mountains for hundreds of years.

The journey was long and tiring. While Dex was riding through green forests, he felt very tired. He camped under the stars. He missed the warm villages. He missed his friends. After many days, Dex reached a quiet grassy area near a small river. He decided to rest there and make tea. Suddenly, he heard a noise in the bushes. A strange thing stepped

out. It was a robot! The robot was covered in green plants and moss. Dex froze in surprise. He had never seen a robot before.

The robot said, "My name is Mosscap." It said, "I belong to the old group of robots. We left humans a long time ago. But now, we must visit humans again." Mosscap had an important job. It asked, “What do humans want?” Dex didn’t know the answer. He said, “I am just a tea monk. I don’t know about big questions.” But Mosscap said, "I will travel with you. I have to learn from humans."

Dex felt unsure. He worried about the old promise. But Mosscap said, "I will be very polite." So, Dex agreed. Together, they continued the journey to the mountains. Mosscap asked many questions about human life. It asked, "Why are you a tea monk? Why do people enjoy tea?" Dex said, "Tea helps people relax. It helps them share their feelings." Mosscap listened carefully. But it didn’t understand human feelings.

While they were traveling, Dex taught Mosscap a lot. He taught the robot to make tea and set up the camp. Mosscap helped fix Dex’s bicycle. It carried heavy bags. They talked about the differences between robots and humans. Mosscap said, "Robots do not need sleep, food, or homes. But we enjoy learning." Dex asked, “Do robots have dreams?” Mosscap replied, “We think about the future. But we don’t dream like humans.”

One evening, they reached a dark forest. Dex felt nervous. The trees were very thick. The path disappeared. Mosscap said, "I can lead the way!" They walked slowly. They pushed the bicycle through bushes and over fallen trees. After many hours, they found an open area with a

beautiful lake. Dex cheered happily. But Mosscap looked confused. It asked, “Why do humans care about new places?” Dex said, “Sometimes, we need to feel small. We must remember our place in the big world.”

The next morning, they explored the broken walls of an old factory. Broken machines and old tools lay under green plants. Mosscap looked at the ruins. It said, “My robot grandfathers worked here. They were not free.” Dex felt sad but also hopeful. He said, “Now you are free. And humans are trying to live better too.”

As days passed, Dex and Mosscap became good friends. They shared stories. They laughed at silly jokes. Mosscap learned to enjoy the smell of trees and the sound of rain. Dex began to see the world in new ways. But Dex still couldn’t answer Mosscap’s big question. He said, “Maybe different people need different things.”

One night, a bad storm hit their camp. Strong winds knocked over the tent. Rain made their food wet. Mosscap helped Dex find a safe cave. While they were waiting for the storm to end, Dex told the truth. He said, "I am tired of always helping others. I don’t know what I need." Mosscap replied, “Maybe you should rest. Or maybe you have to keep searching.”

When the storm passed, they reached the top of the mountain. Dex looked at the big world below. He saw forests, rivers, and small villages. He felt happy and sad at the same time. Mosscap asked again, “What do humans need?” Dex sighed. He said, “I still don’t know.

Maybe, we must keep asking questions.” Mosscap smiled. It said, “That is the best answer.”

They returned to the grassy area near the river. Dex knew the truth. He thought, "I have to go back to my village." Mosscap decided to visit other humans. It wanted to ask its question. Before leaving, it said, “Thank you for traveling with me. You helped me learn many things.” Dex replied, “Thank you for helping me too.”

Dex rode his bicycle home. He felt happier than before. He still didn’t have all the answers. But he understood a new lesson. He thought, "Searching is an important part of life." He returned to his work as a tea monk. He added new stories to share with the people. And sometimes, while he was making tea, he thought about Mosscap. He thought about the robot exploring the world, and he smiled.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. **Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).**

a) Dex worked as a tea monk and traveled from village to village. _____

b) Mosscap was a scary robot that wanted to hurt humans in the dark forest. _____

c) While they were traveling, Dex taught Mosscap how to make tea and set up the camp. _____

d) During the bad storm, Mosscap told Dex that it wanted to go back to the robot cities. _____

e) At the end of the story, Dex felt happier than before and returned to his work as a tea monk. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What did Dex use to pull his small wagon with tea, pots, and cups?

a) A strong bicycle

b) A big metal car

c) A green robot

2. What important question did Mosscap want to ask humans?

a) "Where are the old factories?"

b) "What do humans want?"

c) "How do you make hot tea?"

3. What happened when a bad storm hit their camp?

a) The robot broke its metal arms and legs.

b) Dex rode his bicycle back to his warm village immediately.

c) Strong winds knocked over the tent, and rain made their food wet.

4. What did Dex and Mosscap explore the next morning after the dark forest?

a) A beautiful castle with magic.

b) The broken walls of an old factory.

c) A tall mountain with green grass.

5. How did Dex feel when he looked at the big world from the top of the mountain?

a) He felt happy and sad at the same time.

b) He felt very angry at Mosscap.

c) He felt afraid of the wild forests.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) The wagon carried tea, pots, and _____.

b) He began a journey to the old, broken buildings in the _____.

c) A strange thing stepped out from the bushes, and it was a _____!

d) Mosscap helped Dex find a safe _____ when the bad storm hit their camp.

e) He added new _____ to share with the people when he returned to his work.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Dex was a tea monk who traveled to different villages to serve tea and listen to people's problems. He felt bored and wanted a bigger purpose, so he rode his bicycle into the wild forests. There, he met a robot named Mosscap, who wanted to learn about humans and ask them what they wanted. Dex and Mosscap traveled together, shared stories, and became very good friends. After a bad storm and a long journey to the mountains, Dex realized that searching for answers is an important part of life. He returned home happier than before to continue his work.

b) Hundreds of years ago, robots and humans had a terrible war in the wild forests. Dex was a brave soldier who rode a strong bicycle to fight the robots in the mountains. One day, he met a dangerous robot named Mosscap. Mosscap wanted to destroy all the villages and take the hot tea from the people. Dex used his magic wagon to catch the robot and put it in a dark cave. At the end of the story, Dex never returned to the forest and stayed in his warm village forever without asking any questions.

c) Dex was a famous doctor who lived in a large city with millions of robots. He hated nature and never wanted to travel to the wild forests. One day, a strange robot named Mosscap arrived and forced Dex to walk to an old factory in the rain. While they were walking, Dex broke his bicycle and had to build a new metal car. They found a beautiful lake, but Mosscap drank all the water and

ran away to the mountains. Dex was very sad and decided to never drink tea or help people again.

STORY 29: THE DISPOSSESSED

by Ursula K. Le Guin

Shevek was a scientist. He lived on Anarres. Anarres was a moon. It moved around a planet named Urras. The people of Anarres had a special life. They had no bosses and no money. Everyone worked together. They shared food and homes. Shevek studied science. He wanted to understand time. He thought, "My work can help people talk across space!" But many scientists on Anarres didn't like his ideas. They thought, "His ideas are too strange. He should focus on real problems." Shevek felt very lonely.

One day, Shevek made a big decision. He wanted to travel to Urras. Urras was a rich planet. The grandparents of Anarres left Urras a long time ago. The people of Anarres never visited Urras. They hated the rich planet. Urras had rich and poor people, bosses, and wars. But Shevek thought, "I must share my ideas with the scientists on Urras. We can connect the two worlds." The people of Anarres argued a lot. Finally, they said, "You can go."

When Shevek arrived on Urras, he was shocked. The planet was very different. Urras had huge cities with tall buildings and busy streets. The people wore beautiful clothes. They ate many kinds of food. Scientists and leaders welcomed Shevek. They wanted his knowledge. They gave him a nice room in a big school. At first, Shevek liked the attention. He talked about his ideas.

Later, Shevek saw big problems. On Urras, some people lived in big houses. But other people worked in dirty factories. Some people begged for food on the streets. The bosses controlled everything. The police said, "You must not complain!" Shevek asked his new friends, "Why do you accept this?" They said, "It is natural. We cannot change it." Shevek disagreed. He remembered Anarres. On Anarres, everyone had equal rights. But he also remembered a bad thing. His people sometimes punished men with different ideas.

Then, Shevek met a woman. Her name was Vea. She showed him the city. She was kind, but she didn’t understand his life. She thought, "Anarres is a strange and poor place." Shevek tried to explain. He said, "Anarres has no poor people." But Vea laughed. She liked Urras’ beautiful clothes and parties. Shevek liked Vea, but he thought, "We live in two different worlds."

Weeks passed. Shevek understood something sad. The scientists on Urras didn't care about sharing. They wanted to use his ideas for money and war. They said, "Give us your numbers!" When he said no, they became angry. The police started to watch him. Shevek felt trapped. He missed his home and his friends. He thought, "Leaving Anarres was my biggest mistake. I have never felt so sad."

One night, Shevek went to a party at a rich man’s house. The people drank expensive wine. Shevek felt strange. He met a poor worker named Efor. Efor hated the bosses. Efor said, "The poor people are fighting the police!" Shevek wanted to help, but he didn’t know how.

Later, he heard guns outside. The police attacked the poor people. Efor disappeared. Shevek felt very bad.

The next day, Shevek decided to act. He went to a park. He started speaking to a large group of people. He talked about Anarres. He said, "We must have freedom! We have to share!" People listened. But the police arrived quickly. They took Shevek to a dark prison. In the prison, Shevek thought about his life. He remembered his wife, Takver. He remembered his children on Anarres. He missed them deeply.

After many days, the police let Shevek go. They said, "You must not cause trouble!" Shevek knew the truth. He thought, "I cannot stay on Urras." He asked the scientists, "Please send me home." But they said no. They still wanted his ideas. Shevek was afraid. He found people from another planet called Terra. They helped him escape. He hid in their spaceship.

While Shevek was traveling back to Anarres, he thought about his trip. He realized a big lesson. Both worlds had good and bad parts. Urras had beautiful art, but it allowed terrible pain. Anarres had equality, but it stopped new ideas. Shevek hoped his work could connect the two worlds.

When Shevek returned to Anarres, the people were divided. Some people said, "He is a hero!" Other people shouted, "He is a bad man! He broke our rules." Takver and his children were happy to see him. But life was hard. The moon was very dry, and there was not much food. Shevek shared his story with the people. He said, "We should

talk to Urras and other planets." Many young people agreed. But older people feared change.

Shevek continued his work. He wrote a book about his ideas. He sent copies to Urras and other worlds. He thought, "Maybe my book will be able to make a change." On Anarres, small groups began talking about new ideas. On Urras, a few students read Shevek's book. They started asking questions about freedom.

In the end, Shevek looked at the stars. He felt hopeful. He thought, "Maybe one day, people from both worlds can learn from each other. Maybe my work can help them."

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Shevek lived on a moon called Anarres where people had no bosses and no money. _____

b) The people of Anarres visited the rich planet Urras every year to share food. _____

c) When Shevek arrived on Urras, he saw that some people lived in big houses and others worked in dirty factories. _____

d) The scientists on Urras wanted to use Shevek's ideas to help poor people. _____

e) At the end of the story, Shevek wrote a book about his ideas and sent copies to Urras and other worlds. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. Why did Shevek decide to travel to Urras?

a) Because he wanted to share his ideas with the scientists there.

b) Because he wanted to buy beautiful clothes and eat expensive food.

c) Because the police on Anarres sent him to a dark prison.

2. Who was Vea?

a) A poor worker who hated the bosses on Urras.

b) A woman on Urras who showed Shevek the city.

c) Shevek's wife who lived on Anarres with their children.

3. What did the police do when Shevek talked to a large group of people in the park?

a) They gave him a nice room in a big school.

b) They helped him escape in a spaceship.

c) They arrived quickly and took him to a dark prison.

4. How did Shevek escape from Urras to go back home?

a) People from another planet called Terra helped him hide in their spaceship.

b) Efor built a small metal car for him to drive back to Anarres.

c) The rich scientists gave him a lot of money to buy a boat.

5. What did Shevek realize about the two worlds while he was traveling back?

a) Urras was a perfect place with no problems or terrible pain.

b) Both worlds had good and bad parts, and he hoped to connect them.

c) Anarres was the only bad planet because the moon was very dry.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) The people of Anarres had a special life with no _____ and no money.

b) Shevek studied science because he wanted to understand _____.

c) On Urras, the scientists wanted to use his ideas for money and _____.

d) Shevek went to a park and talked about _____ to a large group of people.

e) Shevek sent copies of his _____ to Urras and other worlds.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Shevek was a rich boss who lived on a beautiful planet called Urras. He loved money and always wore expensive clothes to big parties. One day, he decided to travel to a dark moon named Anarres to start a new war with the poor workers. When he arrived, the people of Anarres gave him a big metal machine and made him their king. Shevek never went back to his family on Urras because he hated tall buildings and busy streets. At the end of the story, he destroyed the moon and lived completely alone in the dry desert forever.

b) Takver and Vea were two young scientists who built a spaceship to travel to a new planet called Terra. They wanted to find a magical book that could change the weather and stop the rain. While they were flying through space, they met a kind police officer named Efor, who gave them plenty of food and clean water. They lived happily on Terra and never had to work in dirty factories or fight in any wars. Efor became the smartest teacher in the school, and they all forgot about Anarres and Urras.

c) Shevek was a scientist from a moon called Anarres, where people shared everything and had no money. He traveled to a rich planet named Urras to share his ideas about time, but he found many problems there. On Urras, there were rich bosses, poor workers, and police who punished people. The scientists

only wanted to use Shevek's ideas for money and war, so he decided to speak out for freedom. After the police put him in prison, people from Terra helped him escape back to Anarres in a spaceship. Shevek learned that both worlds had good and bad parts, and he wrote a book to help them understand each other.

STORY 30: THE WORK OF ART

by Mimi Matthews

Sophie was a young woman. She lived in a small village in England. She was a painter. She loved painting flowers and animals. Sophie lived with her grandfather. He was kind, but he was very old and sick. They were poor. Sophie sold her paintings at the market to buy food and medicine. Her life was simple but happy. But then, her grandfather became too sick to leave his bed. Sophie was worried. She thought, "I have to care for him."

One day, a letter arrived from a lawyer in London. The letter read, "Your uncle, Sir Edward, is dead. He left you a very big house in the country." The house was Willowbrook Hall. Sophie was shocked. She had never met her uncle. Her grandfather never spoke about him. The lawyer said, "You must visit Willowbrook Hall." Sophie didn't want to leave her grandfather. But he said, "You should go. This can change our lives."

Sophie traveled to Willowbrook Hall. The house was bigger than any house in her village. It had tall windows and beautiful gardens. Inside, there were many expensive things. The lawyer, Mr. Clark, said, "Sir Edward had no children. He left everything to you. But there is one rule. You must live at Willowbrook Hall for one year." If she left, another family member would get the house. Sophie agreed. She wanted to bring her grandfather to live there.

When Sophie returned home, she shared the news. Her grandfather was happy, but he was too weak to travel. Sophie said, "I will prepare the house for you!" A week later, she moved into the house with her dog, Pip. The workers at Willowbrook Hall were polite but not friendly. The head worker, Mrs. Burton, said, “The house is very dirty. We need time to clean.” Sophie tried to stay happy. She walked around the house. She found a beautiful art room with paints and brushes. She began painting again.

One morning, while Sophie was walking in the village, she met a man. His name was Captain Halifax. He was a tall and serious soldier. He had a large mark on his face. He lived in a small house nearby. He said, "Willowbrook Hall has a bad history. Strange things happen there at night!" Sophie laughed. She said, "I do not believe in ghosts." Captain Halifax didn’t smile. “You must be careful,” he said.

That night, Sophie heard noises in the hall. Pip barked at the door. But when Sophie opened it, the hall was empty. The next day, she found a new painting in the art room. She didn’t paint it! It showed a dark forest and a scary man. Sophie asked the workers about it. But they said, "We didn't go into that room!" Mrs. Burton said, “No one uses that room. It belonged to Sir Edward.”

Strange things continued to happen. Sophie heard footsteps when she was alone. Paintings moved to different rooms. One afternoon, she found a letter inside a book. The letter was from her uncle to a woman named Clara. It read, “I am very sorry. Please forgive me.” Sophie

didn’t know Clara. But she thought, "My uncle was hiding a big secret."

Captain Halifax visited Willowbrook Hall. Sophie showed him the strange painting and the letter. He looked worried, but he said nothing. He said, “Some secrets must remain a secret forever.” Sophie was angry. “I have to know the truth about this house!” she said. Captain Halifax finally agreed to help her.

Together, they searched the book room. They found old newspapers. The newspapers talked about a big fire at Willowbrook Hall twenty years ago. The fire killed a young woman named Clara. Clara was Sir Edward’s future wife. Sophie realized the truth. Clara was the woman from the letter! She asked Mrs. Burton about the fire. But the worker became angry. “You must not ask questions,” she said. “It is not safe.”

One stormy night, Sophie woke up. She heard breaking glass. She ran to the art room and found a broken window. A painting of Clara’s face was cut in two pieces. Captain Halifax arrived quickly. He looked at the window and said, “Someone wants you to leave.” Sophie wrote a letter to the lawyer, but he didn’t answer.

The next day, Sophie got a letter from her village. Her grandfather was very sick. He needed her to come home. Sophie was afraid. She thought, "If I leave, I will lose the house!" But she could not leave her grandfather alone. Captain Halifax said, "I can travel to your village. I will bring your grandfather here." Sophie agreed.

While Captain Halifax was traveling, Sophie went to the top room of the house. She found a large, locked box. She used a key to open it. Inside the box, she found letters between Sir Edward and Clara. Clara wrote about a bad man named Mr. Grey. Clara wrote, "I am afraid of Mr. Grey!" Sir Edward promised to protect her. But Clara died in the fire. The last letter read, "Mr. Grey is very angry. Clara will not marry him."

When Captain Halifax returned with her grandfather, Sophie showed him the letters. Captain Halifax knew the name Mr. Grey. He said, “He worked with Sir Edward. After Clara’s death, Mr. Grey left the country. But I saw him in the village last week!” Sophie understood everything. Mr. Grey was the bad man in the house. He wanted to scare her. He wanted to take Willowbrook Hall!

Captain Halifax and Sophie went to the police. The police searched the village. They found Mr. Grey hiding in an old farm building. He told the police the truth. He said, "I started the fire many years ago! I tried to make Sophie go away." The police arrested Mr. Grey. The strange things at Willowbrook Hall stopped.

Sophie’s grandfather moved into the house. He slowly got better. Sophie continued painting. Captain Halifax often visited them. One day, he brought her a gift. It was a box of new paints from London. Sophie thanked him. She said, "I am happy we are friends." Captain Halifax smiled. He said, “I hope we can be more than friends.” Sophie was surprised but very happy.

At the end of the year, Sophie's paintings became famous in the village. She had a big art party at Willowbrook Hall. Captain Halifax held her hand. The guests loved her work. Sophie's grandfather said, "I am very proud of you." Sophie smiled. She knew Willowbrook Hall was finally their true home.

The End

Reading comprehension

1. Read the following sentences and mark them as true (T) or false (F).

a) Sophie's grandfather gave her a very big house in the country called Willowbrook Hall. _____

b) Sophie had to live at Willowbrook Hall for one year to keep the house. _____

c) Captain Halifax was a tall and serious soldier who lived nearby and helped Sophie. _____

d) While Captain Halifax was traveling, Sophie found a large, locked box with letters inside. _____

e) At the end of the story, Mr. Grey bought Willowbrook Hall and had a big art party. _____

2. Read the following questions and choose the correct option.

1. What did Sophie do to buy food and medicine for her sick grandfather?

a) She painted the tall windows at Willowbrook Hall.

b) She sold her paintings of flowers and animals at the market.

c) She worked as a lawyer in London.

2. What strange thing did Sophie find in the art room that she didn't paint?

a) A letter from her grandfather.

b) A painting of a dark forest and a scary man.

c) A box of new paints from London.

3. Who died in the big fire at Willowbrook Hall twenty years ago?

a) Clara, Sir Edward's future wife.

b) Mrs. Burton, the head worker.

c) Pip, Sophie's dog.

4. Why did Mr. Grey want to scare Sophie away from the house?

a) Because he wanted to marry Clara.

b) Because he wanted to take Willowbrook Hall for himself.

c) Because he hated paintings of flowers and animals.

5. What happened at the end of the year at Willowbrook Hall?

a) The police arrested Sophie's grandfather.

b) The house burned down in another big fire.

c) Sophie had a big art party and her paintings became famous.

3. Complete the following sentences using words from the summary.

a) Sophie's uncle left her a very big house, and it was _____ than any house in her village.

b) The lawyer said, "You _____ live at Willowbrook Hall for one year."

c) That night, Sophie heard noises in the hall, and Pip _____ at the door.

d) Sophie realized the truth: Clara was the woman from the _____!

e) Captain Halifax brought her a gift, which was a _____ of new paints from London.

4. Read the following paragraphs and choose the one that summarizes the story correctly.

a) Captain Halifax was a tall and serious soldier who lived in a large, locked box at Willowbrook Hall. He loved to paint dark forests and scary men in the art room every night. One day, a young woman named Clara arrived with her dog, Pip, and told Captain Halifax that he had to leave the house. Captain Halifax was very angry, so he started a big fire that destroyed all the beautiful gardens and expensive things. At the end of the story, the police arrested Clara, and Captain Halifax moved to a small village in England to sell flowers at the market.

b) Sophie was a young painter who lived with her sick grandfather. When her uncle died, she received a big house called Willowbrook Hall, but she had to live there for a year to keep it. In the house, strange things happened: noises, moving paintings, and broken windows. With the help of a soldier named Captain Halifax, Sophie discovered the house's bad history and a secret about a woman named Clara who died in a fire. They found out a bad man named Mr. Grey was trying to scare Sophie away to take the house, so the police arrested him. Finally, Sophie's grandfather moved in, she had a big art party, and she found happiness with Captain Halifax.

c) Sophie and her grandfather were very rich lawyers who lived in London. They bought a beautiful house called Willowbrook Hall to throw big art parties for their friends. A polite worker named Mrs. Burton helped them clean the tall windows and paint the doors. However, a bad man named Mr. Grey visited the house and stole all their expensive paintings and boxes of new paints.

Sophie was sadder than anyone else, so she sold the house to a man named Sir Edward and moved back to her small village. She never painted flowers or animals again in her entire life.

READING ANSWER KEY

1. Moby-Dick by Herman Melville

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1	T	a	inn	c
2	F	c	tattoos	
3	T	a	wooden	
4	F	b	hard	
5	T	b	wood	

2. Pride and Prejudice by Jane Austen

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	F	b	rich	b
2.	T	a	quietest	
3.	T	c	waiting	
4.	F	b	letter	
5.	F	a	lesson	

3. Jane Eyre by Charlotte Brontë

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1	T	a	cruel	b
2	F	b	governess	

3.	T	c	laugh	
4.	F	a	mental	
5.	T	a	sight	

4. Alice's Adventures in Wonderland by Lewis Carroll

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	T	b	Drink	a
2.	F	a	mushroom	
3.	F	c	smile	
4.	T	a	trial	
5	T	b	dream	

5. Frankenstein by Mary Shelley

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1	T	b	mistake	b
2	F	a	lightning	
3.	T	c	sneak	
4.	F	b	dangerous	
5.	F	a	snow	

6. The Count of Monte Cristo by Alexandre Duma

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4

1	T	b	worker	c
2.	F	a	prison	
3.	T	c	escape	
4.	F	a	stones	
5	T	c	anger	

7. Dracula by Bram Stoker

No	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	T	b	office	c
2.	F	c	spider	
3	T	a	blood	
4.	F	b	sicknesses	
5.	T	a	head	

8. The Picture of Dorian Gray by Oscar Wilde

No	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	F	b	forever	b
2.	T	c	older	
3.	T	a	secret	
4.	T	b	scientist	
5	F	c	noise	

9. Persuasion by Jane Austen

No	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	T	b	proud	a
2.	F	b	cheaply	
3.	T	a	richer	
4.	F	c	steps	
5	T	a	letter	

10. The Odyssey by Homer

No	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	T	a	king	c
2.	F	b	wind	
3	T	c	heads	
4	F	a	cloth	
5.	T	b	bad	

11. War and Peace by Leon Tolstoy

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1	T	b	powerful	a
2	F	a	family	
3.	T	c	hurt	
4.	F	a	winter	

5	T	b	things	

12. Great Expectations by Charles Dickens

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1	T	b	angrier	a
2.	F	a	tool	
3.	T	c	wedding	
4.	F	b	expensive	
5.	T	a	river	

13. Les Misérables by Victor Hugo

No	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	T	b	boss	c
2.	F	a	stricter	
3	T	c	wall	
4	F	c	river	
5.	T	b	tunnels	

14. The Great Gatsby by F. Scott Fitzgerald

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1	T	b	exciting	b
2	F	a	music	

3.	T	c	secretly	
4.	F	a	killed	
5.	T	b	dangerous	

15. 1984 by George Orwell

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	T	b	stories	b
2.	F	c	things	
3.	T	a	safe	
4.	F	a	rats	
5	T	b	freedom	

16. To Kill a Mockingbird by Harper Lee

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1	F	b	law	a
2	T	a	tree	
3.	F	c	respect	
4.	T	c	hurt	
5.	T	a	braver	

17. The Catcher in the Rye by J.D. Salinger

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4

1	T	b	rules	b
2.	F	a	Phoebe	
3.	T	c	smarter	
4.	F	b	bag	
5	T	a	carousel	

18. Sense and Sensibility by Jane Austen

No	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	F	b	spoke	a
2.	T	c	sick	
3	F	a	patient	
4.	T	b	listen	
5.	F	a	happiest	

19. Little Women by Louisa May Alcott

No	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	T	c	soldier	c
2.	F	a	breakfast	
3.	T	b	beautiful	
4.	F	a	hair	
5	T	b	school	

20. The Scarlet Letter by Nathaniel Hawthorne

No	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	F	a	rules	c
2.	T	b	floor	
3.	F	c	doctor	
4.	T	a	forest	
5	F	a	money	

21. My family and Other Animals by Gerald Durrell

No	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	T	b	unhappy	b
2.	F	c	Ulysses	
3	T	c	mistake	
4	T	a	zoo	
5.	F	a	disappear	

22. The Lathe of Heaven by Ursula K. Le Guin

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1	T	a	machine	a
2	F	b	turtles	
3.	T	c	floods	
4.	F	a	prison	

5	T	b	painting	

23. To Say Nothing of the Dog by Connie Willis

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1	T	a	must	a
2.	T	b	manners	
3.	F	b	better	
4.	T	a	war	
5.	F	b	vase	

24. All the Birds in the Sky by Charlie Jane Anders

No	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	T	b	tree	b
2.	F	a	arms	
3	F	c	mountains	
4	T	c	Engine	
5.	T	a	trees	

25. Howl's Moving Castle by Diana Wynne Jones

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1	T	b	magic	c
2	F	c	move	

3.	T	a	lazy	
4.	F	b	scarecrow	
5.	F	c	hats	

26. The Fifth Sacred Thing by Starhawk

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	T	a	rivers	a
2.	F	b	sun	
3.	T	a	army	
4.	F	c	kindness	
5.	T	b	family	

27. Sorcerer to the Crown by Zen Cho

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	T	b	father	c
2.	F	c	India	
3.	T	a	mean	
4.	F	a	creatures	
5.	T	b	female	

28. A Psalm for the Wild-Built by Becky Chambers

No.	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4

1	T	a	cups	a
2.	F	b	mountains	
3.	T	c	robot	
4.	F	b	cave	
5	T	a	stories	

29. The Dispossessed by Ursula K. Le Guin

No	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	T	a	bosses	c
2.	F	b	time	
3	T	c	war	
4.	F	a	freedom	
5.	T	b	book	

30. The Work of Art by Mimi Matthews

No	Exercise 1	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4
1.	F	b	bigger	b
2.	T	b	must	
3.	T	a	barked	
4.	T	b	letter	
5	F	c	box	

GRAMMAR REFERENCE

Section 1: Verbs and Tenses

1. Simple Present

The Simple Present is used to talk about routines, habits, facts, and things that are generally true.

Affirmative

Subject Pronoun	Examples
I	I **want** to see the world.
You	You **work** hard on the ship.
He	He **hunts** the big white whale.
She	She **sails** into the dangerous sea.
It	It **hits** the small boats with its tail.
We	We **clean** the ship every day.
They	They **throw** harpoons at the whales.

Negative

Subject Pronoun	Auxiliary + Not	Examples

I	don't (do not)	I **don't like** my life on land.
You	don't (do not)	You **don't see** white whales very often.
He	doesn't (does not)	He **doesn't have** a real leg.
She	doesn't (does not)	She **doesn't fear** strong storms.
It	doesn't (does not)	It **doesn't escape** easily.
We	don't (do not)	We **don't sleep** much on the ship.
They	don't (do not)	They **don't catch** Moby-Dick.

Interrogative

Examples	Affirmative answer	Negative answer
Do I **need** a harpoon?	Yes, you do.	No, you don't.
Do you **work** on the Pequod?	Yes, I do.	No, I don't.
Does he **want** to catch the whale?	Yes, he does.	No, he doesn't.
Does she **cook** for them?	Yes, she does.	No, she doesn't.
Does it **destroy** the boats?	Yes, it does.	No, it doesn't.
Do we **hunt** together?	Yes, we do.	No, we don't.
Do they **survive** the storm?	Yes, they do.	No, they don't.

Third person spelling rules

RULE	EXAMPLES

Most verbs will only need an extra –s at the end	drive – drive**s,** come – come**s**
If a verb ends in **-o**, **-ss, -ch, -sh or -x**, just add **-es**	kiss – kiss**es,** finish – finish**es** watch – watch**es** fix – fix**es** go – go**es** do – do**es**
If a verb ends in any **consonant + y**, then **drop** the **y** and **add –ies**	cry – cr**ies,** try – tr**ies**
If a verb ends in any **vowel + y**, **add -s**	play – play**s,** pay – pay**s**
Exception	Have – **has**

Exercise 1.1

Write the third person form of the following verbs.

1	want	**11**	clean
2	walk	**12**	ask
3	meet	**13**	hit
4	think	**14**	shout
5	go	**15**	throw
6	find	**16**	dive

7	speak	**17**	swim
8	catch	**18**	try
9	sail	**19**	die
10	work	**20**	destroy

Exercise 1.2

Complete the following sentences using the correct **Simple Present** form of the verb in parentheses.

No.	Sentence
1	Ishmael ____ (want) to see the world.
2	Queequeg ____ (have) lots of tattoos on his skin.
3	Captain Ahab and the sailors ____ (hunt) whales in the ocean.
4	The big white whale ____ (hit) the small boats with his tail.
5	The Pequod ____ (sail) for many weeks.
6	Ishmael and Queequeg ____ (help) each other on the ship.
7	Captain Ahab ____ (shout) at the men during the storm.
8	The men ____ (throw) their harpoons at the whales.
9	Moby-Dick ____ (dive) deep into the sea.

10 I ____ (work) hard as a sailor.

Exercise 1.3

Change the sentences in activity 1.2 to the negative form.

No.	Sentence
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 1.4

Change the sentences in activity 1.2 to the interrogative form.

No.	Sentence
1	
2	
3	
4	

5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 1.5

Choose the correct short answer for each question.

No.	Question	Options
1	Do the sailors want to catch Moby-Dick?	**a)** No, they don't. **b)** No, they doesn't. **c)** No, they aren't.
2	Does Captain Ahab have a wooden leg?	**a)** Yes, he do. **b)** Yes, he does. **c)** Yes, he is.
3	Does Ishmael survive the shipwreck?	**a)** Yes, he does. **b)** Yes, he do. **c)** Yes, he survive.
4	Do Ishmael and Queequeg stay in a small inn?	**a)** Yes, they does. **b)** Yes, they do.

		c) Yes, we do.
5	Does the whale hit the boat with its head?	**a)** No, it don't. **b)** No, it doesn't. **c)** No, it isn't.
6	Does the Pequod sail to the south?	**a)** Yes, it does. **b)** Yes, she do. **c)** Yes, it is.
7	Do the men feel afraid of the storm?	**a)** Yes, they are. **b)** Yes, they do. **c)** Yes, they does.
8	Does Moby-Dick escape in the end?	**a)** Yes, he do. **b)** Yes, he does. **c)** Yes, he doesn't.
9	Do you want to hunt whales?	**a)** No, I don't. **b)** No, I doesn't. **c)** No, I am not.
10	Does Queequeg have tattoos?	**a)** Yes, he has. **b)** Yes, he do. **c)** Yes, he does.

2. Present Continuous

The Present Continuous is used to talk about actions that are happening right now, at this moment.

Affirmative

Subject Pronoun	Verb *To Be*	Verb + ing	Examples
I	am (‘m)	waiting	I**'m waiting** for Mr. Bingley to propose!
You	are (‘re)	looking	You**'re looking for** a rich husband.
He	is (‘s)	watching	He**'s watching** Elizabeth.
She	is (‘s)	visiting	She**'s visiting** Mr. Darcy's home.
It	is (‘s)	raining	It**'s raining** in the country.
We	are (‘re)	talking	We**'re talking** about life and marriage.
They	are (‘re)	moving	They**'re moving** into a big house.

Negative

Subject Pronoun	Verb *To Be*	Verb + ing	Examples
I	am not (‘m not)	marrying	I**’m not marrying** Mr. Collins.
You	are not (aren’t)	listening	You **aren't listening** to your father.
He	Is not (isn’t)	talking	He **isn't talking** to Elizabeth at the party.
She	Is not (isn’t)	staying	She **isn't staying** in her hometown.

It	Is not (isn’t)	working	Their marriage **isn't working**.
We	are not (aren’t)	waiting	We **aren't waiting** for the priest.
They	are not (aren’t)	treating	They **aren't treating** the workers badly.

Interrogative and short answers

Examples	Affirmative	Negative answer
Am I **reading** the letter right now?	Yes, you are.	No, you aren't.
Are you **waiting** for Mr. Bingley?	Yes, I am.	No, I'm not.
Is he **visiting** the Bennet family?	Yes, he is.	No, he isn't.
Is she **running** away with a bad man?	Yes, she is.	No, she isn't.
Is it **raining** outside Pemberley?	Yes, it is.	No, it isn't.
Are we **moving** to a big house?	Yes, we are.	No, we aren't.
Are they **trying** to escape?	Yes, they are.	No, they aren't.

-ING SPELLING RULES

RULE	Examples
One syllable, one vowel + one consonant	sit – sit**ting,** stop – stop**ping**
***** Do not double W, X or Y	snow – sno**wing**, fix – fix**ing**, play – play**ing**

* Two or more syllables, one vowel + one consonant * You can double the final consonant in verbs with two or more syllables only if the last syllable is stressed.	listen – listen**ing** straighten – straighten**ing** begin – begin**ning** forget – forget**ting** admit – admit**ting**
Verbs ending in **-y**	marry – marry**ing,** spy – spy**ing**
Verbs ending in **–e**, * Do not drop the –e in verbs ending in double –ee.	write – writ**ing** see – see**ing,** agree – agree**ing**
Verbs ending in **–ie**	die – d**ying,** lie – **lying,** tie – t**ying**
Verbs ending in **–c**	mimic – mimic**king,** panic – panic**king,** traffic **–** traffi**cking**

Exercise 2.1

Write the -ing form of the following verbs

1	live	**11**	say
2	marry	**12**	watch
3	read	**13**	leave
4	wait	**14**	move
5	stay	**15**	dance

6	run	**16**	smile
7	write	**17**	sit
8	look	**18**	think
9	talk	**19**	get
10	visit	**20**	treat

Exercise 2.2

Complete the following sentences using the correct **Present Continuous** form of the verb in parentheses (**am** / **is** / **are** + **verb-ing**).

No.	Sentence
1	Elizabeth ____ (read) a letter from Mr. Darcy.
2	Mr. Bingley and Jane ____ (talk) at the party.
3	Mrs. Bennet ____ (look) for rich husbands for her daughters.
4	Mr. Darcy ____ (watch) Elizabeth from a distance.
5	Lydia ____ (stay) in another town.
6	Mr. Collins ____ (visit) the Bennet family.
7	The workers ____ (say) good things about Mr. Darcy.
8	Elizabeth and Charlotte ____ (think) about life and marriage.

9 I ____ (wait) for Mr. Bingley to propose.

10 Jane and Mr. Bingley ____ (move) to a house nearby.

Exercise 2.3

Change the sentences in activity 2.2 to the negative form.

No.	Sentence
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 2.4

Change the sentences in activity 2.2 to the interrogative form.

No.	Sentence
1	
2	

3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 2.5

Choose the correct short answer for each question.

No.	Question	Options
1	Is Mrs. Bennet looking for rich husbands for her daughters?	**a)** Yes, she is. **b)** Yes, she's. **c)** Yes, she does.
2	Are Mr. Darcy and Mr. Bingley staying at the party?	**a)** Yes, they staying. **b)** Yes, they are. **c)** Yes, they do.
3	Is Elizabeth marrying Mr. Collins?	**a)** No, she isn't. **b)** No, she doesn't. **c)** No, she not.

4	Are Jane and Elizabeth reading books with their father?	**a)** No, they don't. **b)** No, they isn't. **c)** No, they aren't.
5	Is Mr. Darcy talking to everyone at the party?	**a)** No, he isn't. **b)** No, he aren't. **c)** No, he doesn't.
6	Are the workers saying good things about Mr. Darcy?	**a)** Yes, they are. **b)** Yes, we are. **c)** Yes, they say.
7	Is Lydia staying at home with her sisters?	**a)** No, she doesn't. **b)** No, she isn't. **c)** No, she not.
8	Are Jane and Mr. Bingley moving to a house nearby?	**a)** Yes, they move. **b)** Yes, they're. **c)** Yes, they are.
9	Is Mr. Collins visiting the Bennet family?	**a)** Yes, he is. **b)** Yes, he's. **c)** Yes, he does.
10	Are Elizabeth and Charlotte talking about marriage?	**a)** Yes, they do. **b)** Yes, they are.

c) Yes, they's.

3. Simple Past of the verb To Be

The simple past of the verb **to be (was/were)** is used to talk about how people, places, or things were in the past

Affirmative

Subject Pronoun	Verb To Be	Examples
I	was	I **was** very scared in the dark room.
You	were	You **were** a teacher at Lowood School.
He	was	He **was** the owner of Thornfield Hall.
She	was	She **was** a cruel woman.
It	was	It **was** a school for orphaned girls.
We	were	We **were** good friends at Lowood.
They	were	They **were** unkind to Jane.

Negative

Subject Pronoun	Verb + Not (Full Form)	Verb + Not (Short Form)	Examples

I	was not	wasn't	I **wasn't** happy at Gateshead Hall.
You	were not	weren't	You **weren't** a rich girl.
He	was not	wasn't	He **wasn't** a kind and patient man.
She	was not	wasn't	She **wasn't** a good aunt.
It	was not	wasn't	It **wasn't** a warm school.
We	were not	weren't	We **weren't** safe in the fire.
They	were not	weren't	They **weren't** nice to Jane.

Interrogative and Short answers

Examples	**Affirmative answer**	**Negative answer**
Was I scared in the Red Room?	Yes, you were.	No, you weren’t.
Were you a good student?	Yes, I was.	No, I wasn’t.
Was he the owner of Thornfield Hall?	Yes, he was.	No, he wasn't.
Was she a kind friend?	Yes, she was.	No, she wasn't.
Was it a dark room?	Yes, it was.	No, it wasn't.
Were we in danger?	Yes, we were.	No, we weren't.

Were they her cousins?	Yes, they were.	No, they weren't.

Exercise 3.1

Complete the following sentences using the correct affirmative form of the verb to be in the **simple past** (**was**, **were**).

No.	Sentence
1	Jane Eyre ____ a young girl.
2	Mrs. Reed and her children ____ unkind to Jane.
3	The Red Room ____ dark and scary.
4	Mr. Brocklehurst ____ a very strict man.
5	Helen ____ kind and patient.
6	You ____ a student at Lowood School.
7	The Rivers family ____ very kind to Jane.
8	St. John ____ a priest.
9	I ____ heartbroken when I left Thornfield Hall.
10	Bertha and Mr. Rochester ____ married.

Exercise 3.2

Change the sentences in activity 3.1 to the negative form.

No.	Sentence
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 3.3

Change the sentences in activity 3.1 to the interrogative form.

No.	Sentence
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	

6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 3.4

Choose the correct short answer for each question.

No.	Question	Options
1	Was Jane happy at Gateshead Hall?	**a)** No, she wasn't. **b)** No, she weren't. **c)** No, she isn't.
2	Were Mrs. Reed's children kind to Jane?	**a)** No, they wasn't. **b)** No, they weren't. **c)** No, they aren't.
3	Was Mr. Rochester the owner of Thornfield Hall?	**a)** Yes, he was. **b)** Yes, he were. **c)** Yes, he is.
4	Was Lowood a school for orphaned girls?	**a)** Yes, it were. **b)** Yes, it is. **c)** Yes, it was.

5	Were Jane and Helen good friends?	**a)** Yes, they were. **b)** Yes, they was. **c)** Yes, they are.
6	Was Bertha the woman who started the fire?	**a)** Yes, she was. **b)** Yes, she is. **c)** Yes, she were.
7	Was Mr. Brocklehurst a kind and patient man?	**a)** No, he weren't. **b)** No, he wasn't. **c)** No, he isn't.
8	Were the Rivers family Jane's cousins?	**a)** Yes, they were. **b)** Yes, they are. **c)** Yes, they was.
9	Was Jane's bed on fire?	**a)** No, it wasn't. **b)** No, it weren't. **c)** No, it isn't.
10	Were Jane and Mr. Rochester happy in the end?	**a)** Yes, they was. **b)** Yes, they were. **c)** Yes, they are.

4. Simple Past (Regular/Irregular verbs)

The Simple Past is used to describe actions that were completed in the past.

Affirmative

Subject Pronoun	Examples
I	I **had** a wonderful dream!
You	You **went** to the Mad Hatter's tea party.
He	He **wore** a coat and looked at a watch.
She	She **decided** to follow him.
It	It **turned** into a pig.
We	We **played** a very strange game.
They	They **threw** small stones at her.

Negative

Subject Pronoun	Auxiliary + Not	Examples
I	didn't (did not)	I **didn't drink** the liquid.

You	didn't (did not)	You **didn't meet** the caterpillar.
He	didn't (did not)	He **didn't want** to help Alice.
She	didn't (did not)	She **didn't know** what to do.
It	didn't (did not)	It **didn't matter**.
We	didn't (did not)	We **didn't break** the rules.
They	didn't (did not)	They **didn't have** any food at the table.

Interrogative

Examples	**Affirmative answer**	**Negative answer**
Did I **grow** taller?	Yes, you did.	No, you didn't.
Did you **see** a white rabbit?	Yes, I did.	No, I didn't.
Did he **have** a very big smile?	Yes, he did.	No, he didn't.
Did she **talk** to the flowers?	Yes, she did.	No, she didn't.
Did it **turn** into a pig?	Yes, it did.	No, it didn't.
Did we **win** the race?	Yes, we did.	No, we didn't.
Did they **throw** small stones?	Yes, they did.	No, they didn't.

Regular verbs spelling rules

RULE	EXAMPLE
Most verbs only need an extra –**ed** at the end	work – work**ed** watch – watch**ed**
If the verb ends in –**e**, add –**d**.	love – love**d** agree – agree**d**
If the verb has **one syllable** and ends in **one consonant** and **one vowel**, double the final consonant * DO NOT double W or X	stop – stop**ped** nod – nod**ded** jam – jam**med** ---------- snow – snow**ed** fix – fix**ed**
If the verb ends in **one consonant** and **one vowel** and has **two or more consonants**, just add –**ed** * In the British English spelling system, **-l** is doubled. * You can double the final consonant in verbs with two or more syllables only if the last syllable is stressed.	listen – listen**ed** straighten – straighten**ed** cancel – cancel**ed*** cancel – cancel**led** travel – travel**led** ---------- prefer – prefer**red** admit – admit**ted**

If a verb ends in –**y**, and a consonant, **drop** the **-y** and add –**i** + **ed**	carry – carr**ied** bury – buri**ed** cry – cr**ied**

Irregular verbs

Irregular verbs do not follow the previous rules and must be memorized

Common Irregular Verbs

Base form	**Past Simple**	**Base form**	**Past Simple**	**Base form**	**Past Simple**
be	**was / were**	fly	**flew**	say	**said**
become	**became**	forget	**forgot**	see	**saw**
begin	**began**	get	**got**	sell	**sold**
break	**broke**	give	**gave**	send	**sent**
bring	**brought**	go	**went**	sing	**sang**
buy	**bought**	grow	**grew**	sit	**sat**
catch	**caught**	have	**had**	sleep	**slept**

choose	**chose**	hear	**heard**	speak	**spoke**
come	**came**	keep	**kept**	spend	**spent**
do	**did**	know	**knew**	swim	**swam**
draw	**drew**	leave	**left**	take	**took**
drink	**drank**	lose	**lost**	teach	**taught**
drive	**drove**	make	**made**	tell	**told**
eat	**ate**	meet	**met**	think	**thought**
fall	**fell**	pay	**paid**	understand	**understood**
feel	**felt**	read	**read**	wear	**wore**
fight	**fought**	ride	**rode**	win	**won**
find	**found**	run	**ran**	write	**wrote**

Exercise 4.1

Write the simple past form of the following **regular verbs**.

1	look	**11**	decide
2	walk	**12**	land
3	call	**13**	want

4	talk	**14**	wait
5	turn	**15**	scare
6	continue	**16**	ask
7	visit	**17**	pick
8	smile	**18**	shout
9	play	**19**	stay
10	watch	**20**	follow

Exercise 4.2

Write the simple past form of the following **irregular verbs**.

1	begin	**11**	feel
2	break	**12**	find
3	catch	**13**	fly
4	choose	**14**	forget
5	come	**15**	get
6	do	**16**	give
7	draw	**17**	go
8	drink	**18**	keep
9	eat	**19**	read

10	fall	**20**	write

Exercise 4.3

Complete the following sentences with the correct **simple past** tense of each verb in parentheses.

No.	Sentence
1	Alice ____ (see) a white rabbit with a watch.
2	The rabbit ____ (run) into a dark hole.
3	Alice ____ (drink) the liquid from the small bottle.
4	The animals ____ (have) a race to dry off.
5	Alice ____ (go) to the White Rabbit's house.
6	The caterpillar ____ (sit) on a big mushroom.
7	The Duchess's baby ____ (turn) into a pig.
8	The Cheshire Cat ____ (smile) at Alice.
9	The Queen of Hearts ____ (shout) at the soldiers.
10	Alice ____ (wake) up by the river.

Exercise 4.4

Change the sentences in activity 4.3 to the negative form.

No.	Sentence
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 4.5

Change the sentences in activity 4.3 to the interrogative form.

No.	Sentence
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	

7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 4.6

Choose the correct short answer for each question.

No.	Question	Options
1	Did Alice follow the White Rabbit?	**a)** Yes, she does. **b)** Yes, she did. **c)** Yes, she is.
2	Did the rabbit wear a hat?	**a)** No, he didn't. **b)** No, he don't. **c)** No, he isn't.
3	Did the animals throw stones at Alice?	**a)** Yes, they did. **b)** Yes, they are. **c)** Yes, they does.
4	Did the baby turn into a dog?	**a)** No, it don't. **b)** No, it wasn't. **c)** No, it didn't.

5	Did Alice eat a piece of mushroom?	**a)** Yes, she did. **b)** Yes, she do. **c)** Yes, she eat.
6	Did the Mad Hatter have food at the table?	**a)** No, he didn't. **b)** No, he don't. **c)** No, he wasn't.
7	Did the Queen of Hearts stay calm?	**a)** No, she wasn’t. **b)** No, she didn't. **c)** No, she isn't.
8	Did the flowers talk to Alice?	**a)** Yes, they were. **b)** Yes, they talk. **c)** Yes, they did.
9	Did the cards fall on Alice?	**a)** Yes, they fall. **b)** Yes, they do. **c)** Yes, they did.
10	Did Alice really go to Wonderland?	**a)** No, she don't. **b)** No, she didn't. **c)** No, she wasn't.

---

5. Past Continuous

The Past Continuous is used to talk about actions that were in progress at a specific time in the past.

Affirmative

Subject Pronoun	Verb *To Be*	Verb + ing	Examples
I	was	working	I **was working** hard in the room.
You	were	studying	You **were studying** science in Germany.
He	was	hiding	He **was hiding** in the forest.
She	was	waiting	She **was waiting** for her wedding day.
It	was	blowing	It **was blowing** hard outside. *(The storm)*
We	were	traveling	We **were traveling** across the cold ice.
They	were	living	They **were living** in a small house.

Negative

Subject Pronoun	Verb *To Be*		Verb + ing	Examples
I	was (wasn't)	not	sleeping	I **wasn't sleeping** well that night.
You	were (weren't)	not	helping	You **weren't helping** the lonely man.
He	was (wasn't)	not	hurting	He **wasn't hurting** anyone at first.
She	was	not	living	She **wasn't living** in Switzerland.

	(wasn't)			
It	was (wasn't)	not	moving	It **wasn't moving**.
We	were (weren't)	not	looking	We **weren't looking** for a monster.
They	were (weren't)	not	expecting	They **weren't expecting** to see him.

Interrogative and short answers

Examples	Affirmative answer	Negative answer
Was I **dreaming** last night?	Yes, you were.	No, you weren't.
Were you **listening** to my story?	Yes, I was.	No, I wasn't.
Was he **trying** to talk to the family?	Yes, he was.	No, he wasn't.
Was she **getting** married?	Yes, she was.	No, she wasn't.
Was it **raining** during the storm?	Yes, it was.	No, it wasn't.
Were we **sailing** in the Arctic?	Yes, we were.	No, we weren't.
Were they **hiding** in the woods?	Yes, they were.	No, they weren't.

Exercise 5.1

Write the -ing form of the following verbs

1	work	**11**	talk
2	study	**12**	scream

3	blow	**13**	run
4	move	**14**	find
5	sleep	**15**	make
6	hide	**16**	follow
7	walk	**17**	travel
8	watch	**18**	take
9	listen	**19**	die
10	learn	**20**	wait

Exercise 5.2

Complete the following sentences using the correct **Past Continuous** form of the verb in parentheses (**was** / we**re** + **verb-ing**).

No.	Sentence
1	Victor (study) science at the university in Germany.
2	A strong storm ____ (blow) outside that night.
3	The ugly man ____ (hide) in the dark forest.
4	The man ____ (walk) alone in the woods.
5	The lonely man ____ (watch) the kind family.
6	The people ____ (scream) in terror when they saw his face.
7	Victor ____ (work) hard to make a wife for him.
8	The man ____ (follow) Victor across the mountains.
9	The sailors ____ (take) Victor on their ship.
10	I (listen) to your sad story.

Exercise 5.3

Change the sentences in activity 5.2 to the negative form.

No.	Sentence
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 5.4

Change the sentences in activity 5.2 to the interrogative form.

No.	Sentence
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	

6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 5.5

Choose the correct short answer for each question.

No.	Question	Options
1	Was Victor studying art in Germany?	**a)** No, he wasn't. **b)** No, he didn't. **c)** No, he aren't.
2	Was the storm blowing outside?	**a)** Yes, it is. **b)** Yes, it was. **c)** Yes, it does.
3	Were Victor's parents living in Switzerland?	**a)** Yes, they were. **b)** Yes, they was. **c)** Yes, they are.
4	Was the scary man hiding in the forest?	**a)** Yes, he does. **b)** Yes, he is. **c)** Yes, he was.

5	Were the sailors taking Victor to Geneva?	**a)** No, they wasn't. **b)** No, they weren't. **c)** No, they didn't.
6	Was Victor sleeping well that night?	**a)** No, he weren't. **b)** No, he didn't. **c)** No, he wasn’t.
7	Was the man walking in the woods?	**a)** Yes, he were. **b)** Yes, he did. **c)** Yes, he was.
8	Were the people screaming when they saw his face?	**a)** Yes, they were. **b)** Yes, they are. **c)** Yes, they did.
9	Was Victor traveling across the ice?	**a)** Yes, it was. **b)** Yes, he was. **c)** Yes, he is.
10	Was I listening to your story?	**a)** Yes, you were. **b)** Yes, you was. **c)** Yes, I am.

6. Past Continuous vs. Simple Past (Interrupted Actions)

We often use the **Past Continuous** and the **Simple Past** together in the same sentence to show that a longer action in the past was interrupted by a shorter action.

Past Continuous: Used for the longer "background" action that was already happening.

Simple Past: Used for the shorter action that interrupted the longer one.

We use the words **when** and **while** to connect these two actions:

Use **while** before the longer action (Past Continuous).

Example: ***While*** Edmond was swimming, he felt happy.

Use **when** before the shorter action (Simple Past).

Example: Edmond was working on the ship ***when*** the captain died.

Affirmative examples:

Edmond **was working** on a ship when the captain **died**.

They **were planning** a wedding when the soldiers **came**.

While Edmond **was swimming** in the sea, he felt happy.

While Edmond **was punishing** his enemies, he **saw** the pain in their eyes.

Negative examples:

Edmond **wasn't doing** anything wrong **when** the soldiers **took** him away.

While Edmond **was staying** in the dark room, he **didn't know** the terrible secret.

Danglars **wasn't expecting** the Count **when** Edmond **destroyed** his bank.

While they **were living** a quiet life, Mercédès **didn't forget** Edmond.

Interrogative examples:

Was Edmond **celebrating** his wedding **when** the soldiers **arrived**?

What **were** they **doing when** the captain **gave** Edmond the letter?

Did Abbé Faria **die while** they **were planning** to escape?

Who **did** Edmond **meet while** he **was living** in the prison?

Exercise 6.1

Choose the correct option (a, b, or c) to complete each sentence with the correct **Past Continuous** and **Simple Past** forms.

No.	Question	Options
1	Edmond _____ on a ship when the captain _____.	**a)** was working - died **b)** worked - was dying **c)** was working - was dying
2	While Edmond _____ in the dark prison, he _____ Abbé Faria.	**a)** stayed - was meeting **b)** was staying - met **c)** stayed - met

3 The soldiers _____ Edmond away while he _____ his wedding.

a) took - celebrated

b) were taking - celebrated

c) took - was celebrating

4 Abbé Faria _____ very sick while they _____ to escape.

a) became - were planning

b) was becoming - planned

c) became - planned

5 While Edmond _____ in the cold water, he _____ free.

a) swam - was feeling

b) was swimming - felt

c) was swimming - was feeling

6 When Mercédès _____ the truth, she _____ at the Count.

a) realized - was looking

b) was realizing - looked

c) realized - looked

7 Edmond _____ his enemies when he _____ a strange pain in his heart.

a) punished - was feeling

b) was punishing - felt

c) was punishing - was feeling

8 While Danglars _____ away, Edmond _____ him.

a) was running - found

b) ran - was finding

c) ran - found

9	Edmond _____ Fernand's terrible secret while Fernand _____ as a rich man.	**a)** discovered - lived **b)** was discovering - lived **c)** discovered - was living
10	While Edmond _____ his money to Maximilien, he _____ to leave his past behind.	**a)** gave - was deciding **b)** was giving - decided **c)** was giving - was deciding

Exercise 6.2

Read the following paragraph and fill in the gaps with the correct past continuous and past simple forms of the verbs in brackets.

One day, while Edmond **1** _____ (plan) his wedding with Mercédès, some bad men **2** _____ (decide) to hurt him. When the soldiers **3** _____ (arrive) at the party, Edmond **4** _____ (celebrate) with his friends. They sent him to the terrible Château d'If. While Edmond **5** _____ (live) in the dark room, he **6** _____ (meet) an old, smart man named Abbé Faria. One night, while they **7** _____ (talk) about the hidden treasure, Abbé Faria **8** _____ (become) very sick and died. Later, while Edmond **9** _____ (swim) in the cold sea to escape, he **10** _____ (find) his freedom at last.

7. Present Perfect

The Present Perfect (**have**/**has** + **past participle**) is used to talk about past actions or experiences that are connected to the present, or actions that happened at an unspecified time in the past.

Affirmative

Subject Pronoun	Examples
I	I **have seen** many scared people today.
You	You **have worked** in an office in England.
He	He **has drunk** blood to stay alive.
She	She **has become** a vampire.
It	It **has turned** to dust.
We	We **have formed** a group to hunt Dracula.
They	They **have destroyed** the boxes of dirt.

Negative

Subject Pronoun	Auxiliary + Not	Examples
I	haven't (have not)	I **haven't forgotten** the brave friends.

You	haven't (have not)	You **haven't understood** the danger.
He	hasn't (has not)	He **hasn't returned** to his castle.
She	hasn't (has not)	She **hasn't found** peace yet.
It	hasn't (has not)	It **hasn't disappeared** completely.
We	haven't (have not)	We **haven't stopped** the monster.
They	haven't (have not)	They **haven't opened** the grave.

Interrogative

Examples	Affirmative answer	Negative answer
Have I **seen** a vampire?	Yes, you have.	No, you haven't.
Have you **read** the book?	Yes, I have.	No, I haven't.
Has he **bitten** Lucy?	Yes, he has.	No, he hasn't.
Has she **become** a vampire?	Yes, she has.	No, she hasn't.
Has it **died** in the sun?	Yes, it has.	No, it hasn't.
Have we **saved** them?	Yes, we have.	No, we haven't.
Have they **chased** Dracula?	Yes, they have.	No, they haven't.

Regular verbs

We use the same rules to form past simple and past participle regular verbs (**usually adding -ed**).

Irregular verbs

Irregular verbs do not follow any rules and must be memorized.

Common Irregular Verbs

Base form	Simple Past	Past Participle	Base form	Simple Past	Past Participle
be	was / were	been	**know**	knew	known
become	became	become	**leave**	left	left
begin	began	begun	**lose**	lost	lost
break	broke	broken	**make**	made	made
bring	brought	brought	**meet**	met	met
buy	bought	bought	**pay**	paid	paid
catch	caught	caught	**read**	read	read
choose	chose	chosen	**ride**	rode	ridden

come	came	come	**run**	ran	run
do	did	done	**say**	said	said
draw	drew	drawn	**see**	saw	seen
drink	drank	drunk	**sell**	sold	sold
drive	drove	driven	**send**	sent	sent
eat	ate	eaten	**sing**	sang	sung
fall	fell	fallen	**sit**	sat	sat
feel	felt	felt	**sleep**	slept	slept
fight	fought	fought	**speak**	spoke	spoken
find	found	found	**spend**	spent	spent
fly	flew	flown	**swim**	swam	swum
forget	forgot	forgotten	**take**	took	taken
get	got	gotten / got	**teach**	taught	taught
give	gave	given	**tell**	told	told
go	went	gone / been	**think**	thought	thought

grow	grew	grown	**understand**	understood	understood
have	had	had	**wear**	wore	worn
hear	heard	heard	**win**	won	won
keep	kept	kept	**write**	wrote	written

Present Perfect + Time Words

Time Word	Use	Example
for	Shows the length of time	Jonathan has been a prisoner in the castle **for** many days. They have lived a quiet and happy life **for** a long time.
since	Shows the starting point	Lucy has been sick **since** Dracula arrived in England. Van Helsing has known about vampires **since** he was a young doctor.
yet	Used in questions/negatives, meaning “until now”	Has the group destroyed all the boxes of dirt **yet**? She is very weak, but she hasn't become a vampire **yet**.
already	Something happened earlier than expected	We must act quickly! He has **already** started to attack Mina. The group has **already** chased him back to Transylvania.

never	Means “at no time in the past”	I have **never** seen people so afraid. The count has **never** eaten or drank with Jonathan.
ever	Used in questions, meaning “at any time”	Have you **ever** seen a monster that looks like a spider? Has he **ever** felt so weak and scared?
just	Means “a very short time ago”	They have **just** cut off his head! The fight is over. Van Helsing has **just** arrived to help Lucy.

Exercise 7.1

Write the past participle form of the following **regular** and **irregular verbs**.

1	work	**11**	know
2	travel	**12**	put
3	see	**13**	open
4	think	**14**	find
5	say	**15**	hide
6	start	**16**	attack
7	look	**17**	learn
8	drink	**18**	destroy
9	try	**19**	fight
10	become	**20**	cut

Exercise 7.2

Complete the following sentences using the correct Present Perfect form of the verb in parentheses (**have** / **has + past participle**).

No.	Sentence
1	Jonathan (travel) to Transylvania.
2	Dracula ____ (buy) a house in England.
3	I ____ (see) scared people in the town.
4	Dracula ____ (drink) blood to stay alive.
5	Lucy ____ (become) a vampire.
6	Van Helsing (put) garlic around her room.
7	The brave friends ____ (form) a group to hunt Dracula.
8	The group ____ (destroy) the boxes of dirt.
9	Jonathan and Quincy ____ (open) Dracula's box.
10	Mina and Jonathan (start) a family.

Exercise 7.3

Change the sentences in activity 7.2 to the negative form.

No.	Sentence
1	
2	
3	

4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 7.4

Change the sentences in activity 7.2 to the interrogative form.

No.	**Sentence**
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 7.5

Choose the correct short answer for each question.

No.	Question	Options
1	Has Jonathan traveled to Transylvania?	**a)** Yes, he has. **b)** Yes, he does. **c)** Yes, he is.
2	Have the local people seen the vampire?	**a)** Yes, they are. **b)** Yes, they have. **c)** Yes, they do.
3	Has Dracula eaten normal food?	**a)** No, he hasn't. **b)** No, he didn't. **c)** No, he doesn't.
4	Have Jonathan and Mina returned to England?	**a)** Yes, they have. **b)** Yes, they did. **c)** Yes, they has.
5	Has Lucy found peace?	**a)** Yes, she has. **b)** Yes, she have. **c)** Yes, she is.
6	Have the friends stopped Dracula's helpers?	**a)** Yes, they have. **b)** Yes, they do. **c)** Yes, they stopped.
7	Has Van Helsing saved Lucy?	**a)** No, he hasn't.

		b) No, he haven't. **c)** No, he doesn't.
8	Have I told you the terrible truth?	**a)** Yes, you have. **b)** Yes, you has. **c)** Yes, you are.
9	Have the group members destroyed all the boxes?	**a)** Yes, it has. **b)** Yes, they has. **c)** Yes, they have.
10	Has Quincy survived the fight?	**a)** No, he hasn't. **b)** No, he isn't. **c)** No, he didn't.

Exercise 7.6

Complete the following sentences in the present perfect with the correct time word: **for**, **since**, **yet**, **already**, **never**, **ever**, or **just.**

No.	Sentence
1	Jonathan thought, "I have _____ seen people so afraid."
2	Have you _____ met an important man from Transylvania?
3	We must act quickly! He has _____ started to attack Mina.
4	Dracula has lived in that dark castle _____ many centuries.
5	She is very sick, but she hasn't died _____.
6	Look! They have _____ cut off Dracula's head! The fight ended a second ago.

7 The count has known about his plan _____ he bought the house in England.

8 It has _____ drank water; it only drinks blood to stay alive.

9 The sun is going down, but we haven't reached the castle _____.

10 The group has _____ destroyed the boxes. They're broken now.

8. The Present Perfect vs. the Simple Past

It is important to know the difference between the **Present Perfect** and the **Simple Past**.

The Simple Past is used for actions that started and finished in the past. We usually know exactly when the action happened (yesterday, last year, in 1890, when he was young).

Clue words: yesterday, last night, ago, in 1890, when.

The Present Perfect is used for actions that happened at an unspecified time in the past, life experiences, or actions that started in the past and continue to the present. The exact time is not important.

Clue words: for, since, already, yet, ever, never, recently, just.

Affirmative examples:	**Explanation**
Basil **painted** a picture of Dorian.	The action is finished. Basil completed the painting in the past.
Dorian **has stayed** young and beautiful for many years.	The action started in the past and continues to the present. He is still young.

Negative examples:	Explanation
At first, Dorian **didn't see** the changes.	The action refers to a specific finished time in the
I **have never been** so scared in my life!	This person is talking about a life experience up to

Negative examples:	Explanation
Did Sibyl **act** badly in the play?	Asking about a specific, finished event in the past.
Have you **become** a better person?	Asking about a change or experience from the past up to now.

Exercise 8.1

Complete the following sentences with the **present perfect** or the **simple past** form of the verbs in parentheses.

No.	Sentence
1	Dorian Gray _____ (arrive) in London many years ago, but people _____ (not / forget) his beautiful face yet.
2	Basil _____ (paint) the magic picture a long time ago, but its magic _____ (last) until today.
3	Lord Henry _____ (see) the painting yesterday, but he _____ (know) Basil for many years.

4 "I _____ (never / see) such a beautiful painting since I _____ (become) an artist," said Basil.

5 Ever since Dorian _____ (make) that terrible wish, his life _____ (be) full of dark secrets.

6 Last night, Dorian _____ (put) the picture in a secret room because it _____ (grow) uglier recently.

7 Dorian _____ (meet) Sibyl at a theater, but he _____ (not / think) about her for years.

8 Dorian _____ (stay) young and handsome since he _____ (make) the wish.

9 Lord Henry and Dorian _____ (meet) when Dorian was young, and they _____ (be) friends for a long time.

10 People whisper because Dorian _____ (do) many bad things since he _____ (move) to the city.

11 Yesterday, Basil _____ (come) to visit Dorian because he _____ (hear) terrible rumors recently.

12 Dorian _____ (kill) Basil in anger, and he _____ (feel) afraid ever since.

13 Alan _____ (help) Dorian destroy the body last week, but he _____ (not / sleep) well since then.

14 James is Sibyl's brother. He _____ (hate) Dorian since his sister _____ (die).

15 "Look at my face! I _____ (stay) young since the day I _____ (be) born," Dorian told James.

16 The picture _____ (become) much uglier since Dorian _____ (commit) his first crime.

17 Dorian _____ (take) a long knife to cut the painting because he _____ (decide) to change his life today.

18 The servants _____ (just / hear) a loud noise, so they _____ (run) into the room a minute ago.

19 The police _____ (already / arrive), but the servants _____ (find) Dorian dead on the floor an hour ago.

20 "I _____ (work) in this house for many years, but I _____ (not / hear) the terrible noise last night!" a servant said.

9. Using *Be like* with the Simple Present and Simple Past

We use the verb **to be** + **like** in two different ways:

To ask for a description: We ask a question with be like to ask about someone's personality, character, or the general feeling of a situation.

To make a comparison: We use be like to say that two people or things are similar.

Simple Present: Descriptions

Question Format	Examples	Answer
What **am** I **like**?	What **am** I **like** when I am nervous?	You are quiet.
What **are** you **like**?	What **are** you **like** at parties?	I am happy and friendly.
What **is** he/she/it **like**?	What **is** Mrs. Smith **like**?	She is sick, but very smart.
What **are** we/they	What **are** Louisa and Henrietta	They are young and

like?	**like**?	happy.

Simple Present: Comparisons

Subject Pronoun	**Verb To Be**	**Like + Noun**	**Examples**
I	'm / 'm not	like	I **'m not like** my older sister Elizabeth.
You	're / aren't	like	You **aren't like** a that man.
He / She / It	is / isn't	like	Mary **is like** a baby; she cries all the time.
We / They	are / aren't	like	We**'re like** those people over there.

Simple Past: Descriptions

Question Format	**Examples**	**Answer**
What **was** I **like**?	What **was** I **like** as a child?	You were very kind.
What **were** you **like**?	What **were** you **like** eight years ago?	I was young and sad.
What **was** he/she/it **like**?	What **was** Frederick **like** in the past?	He was poor but handsome.

What **were** we/they **like**?	What **were** Sir Walter and Elizabeth **like**?	They were proud and selfish.

Simple Past: Comparisons

Subject Pronoun	Verb To Be	Like + Noun	Examples
I	was / wasn't	like	I **was like** a lonely prisoner in that house.
You	were / weren't	like	You **weren't like** the other girls in Lyme.
He / She / It	was / wasn't	like	The beautiful letter **was like** a dream come true. **The accident wasn't like a small fall; it was shocking.**
We / They	were / weren't	like	We **were like** two people perfectly in love. They **weren't like** a happy family.

Exercise 9.1

Complete the following questions and answers with the correct form of the verb be (**am**, **is**, **are**, **was**, or **were**) and **like** if necessary.

No.	Question and Answer
1	**Q:** What _____ Frederick _____ eight years ago?

A: He _____ a poor young man.

2 **Q:** What _____ Sir Walter _____?

A: He _____ a very proud man who loves money.

3 **Q:** What _____ Louisa and Henrietta _____?

A: They _____ young, happy, and friendly.

4 **Q:** What _____ Anne's sisters _____ when they lived at Kellynch Hall?

A: They _____ selfish and loud; they only cared about themselves.

5 **Q:** What _____ Louisa's fall in Lyme _____?

A: It _____ shocking and very scary for everyone.

6 **Q:** What _____ Mr. Elliot _____?

A: He _____ a bad man who only cares about money.

7 **Q:** What _____ Mary _____ when she doesn't get what she wants?

A: She _____ a crying baby!

8 **Q:** What _____ the beautiful letter from Captain Wentworth _____ for Anne?

A: It _____ a wonderful dream come true.

9 **Q:** What _____ Mrs. Smith _____?

A: She _____ poor and sick, but very smart.

10 **Q:** What _____ Captain Wentworth _____ when he came back to visit?

A: He _____ rich, confident, and handsome.

---

10 Giving Reasons with *to* and *for*

1. Using **to + verb**

Form: *to + base verb*

Use: Explains the **purpose** of an action (why you do something).

Examples:

- Odysseus left Ithaca **to** fight in the Trojan War.
- Penelope didn't finish the cloth **to** trick the bad men.
- Did he travel to the land of the dead **to** meet a wise man?

2. Using **for + noun**

Form: *for + noun / pronoun*

Use: Explains the **reason or benefit** of something, often showing **who or what** it is for.

Examples:

- Aeolus gave Odysseus a bag of wind **for** his trip home.
- The bad men didn't wait in the house **for** fun.
- Did the angry giant cry **for** help?

Summary

Structure	Use	Example
to + verb	**Purpose** (why you do something) **Tip:** If it's a verb, use to.	The Greeks built a wooden horse **to** win the war.
for + noun	**Reason/benefit** (who/what it is for) **Tip:** If it's a noun, use for.	This gold is not **for** them.

Exercise 10.1

Complete the following sentences with **to** or **for**.

No.	Sentence
1	The Greeks built a big wooden horse _____ hide inside the city of Troy.
2	After the escape, the angry giant cried _____ help.
3	Did Odysseus travel to the land of the dead _____ find a way home?
4	Penelope didn't choose a new husband _____ her kingdom.
5	Telemachus and his father make a clever plan _____ defeat the bad men.
6	Did Odysseus ask the kind people on the new island _____ a ship?

7 The men didn't open the bag of wind _____ destroy their own boat.

8 Odysseus put wax in his men's ears _____ protect them from the Sirens.

9 Did the bad men stay in Penelope's _____ money?

10 Penelope didn’t want _____ finish the cloth.

11. Present Continuous and Be going to for Plans, Intentions, and Predictions

Present continuous

Present Continuous for Plans: It is used to talk about fixed plans or arrangements in the future. We usually know the time and place.

Affirmative

Examples

I **am meeting** Anatole tonight.

You **are leaving** the army tomorrow.

Napoleon **is bringing** his army to Russia soon.

Natasha **is marrying** Pierre in the future.

The weather **is becoming** extremely cold next month.

We **are burning** the city of Moscow tonight.

Pierre and Natasha **are starting** a family.

Negative

Examples
I **am not meeting** Anatole tonight.
You **aren't leaving** the army tomorrow.
Napoleon **isn't bringing** his army to Russia soon.
Natasha **isn't marrying** Pierre in the future.
The weather **isn't becoming** extremely cold next month.
We **aren't burning** the city of Moscow tonight.
Pierre and Natasha **aren't starting** a family.

Interrogative and short answers

Examples	Affirmative answer	Negative answer
Am I **meeting** Anatole tonight?	Yes, you are.	No, you aren't.
Are you **leaving** the army tomorrow?	Yes, I am.	No, I'm not.
Is Napoleon **bringing** his army?	Yes, he is.	No, he isn't.
Is Natasha **marrying** Pierre?	Yes, she is.	No, she isn't.
Is the weather **becoming** cold?	Yes, it is.	No, it isn't.
Are we **burning** the city?	Yes, we are.	No, we aren't.
Are they **starting** a family?	Yes, they are.	No, they aren't.

Be going to

Be going to for Intentions: It is used to talk about plans we decided to do before we speak.

Be going to for Predictions: We use it to make a prediction about the future when we see evidence right now.

Affirmative

Examples

I **am going to find** true love!

You **are going to be** a very rich man.

Pierre **is going to help** poor people.

Andrei's wife **is going to have** a baby.

It’**s going to be** a terrible war.

We’**re going to build** a happy life.

Natasha and Anatole **are going to escape**.

Negative

Examples

I **am not going to find** true love!

You **aren't going to be** a very rich man.

Pierre **isn't going to help** poor people.

Andrei's wife **isn't going to have** a baby.

It **isn't going to be** a terrible war.

We **aren't going to build** a happy life.

Natasha and Anatole **aren't going to escape**.

Interrogative and short answers

Examples	Affirmative answer	Negative answer
Am I **going to find** true love?	Yes, you are.	No, you aren't.
Are you **going to be** rich?	Yes, I am.	No, I'm not.
Is Pierre **going to help** the poor?	Yes, he is.	No, he isn't.
Is she **going to have** a baby?	Yes, she is.	No, she isn't.
Is it **going to be** a terrible war?	Yes, it is.	No, it isn't.
Are we **going to build** a happy life?	Yes, we are.	No, we aren't.
Are they **going to escape**?	Yes, they are.	No, they aren't.

Exercise 11.1

Put the words in the right order to write affirmative sentences in the **present continuous** or **be going to.**

No.	Scrambled Words	Correct Sentence
1	going / a / have / baby / Andrei's / wife / is / to	
2	to / Pierre / help / is / poor / going / people	
3	getting / Pierre / married / Natasha / and / are	
4	is / true / find / Natasha / going / love / to	
5	Napoleon / army / bringing / is / his / to / Russia	
6	the / are / burn / Russians / going / to / Moscow	
7	Anatole / escaping / Natasha / are / and / tonight	
8	are / to / start / they / a / family / going	
9	leaving / French / army / the / Russia / is	

10 to / is / a / life / build / Pierre / going / happy

Exercise 11.2

Change the sentences in activity 11.2 to the negative form.

No.	Sentence
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 11.3

Change the sentences in activity 2.2 to the interrogative form.

No.	Sentence
1	
2	

3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 11.4

Choose the correct short answer for each question.

No.	Question	Options
1	Is Andrei's wife going to have a baby?	**a)** Yes, she is. **b)** Yes, she does. **c)** Yes, she has.
2	Are Natasha and Anatole getting married?	**a)** No, they don't. **b)** No, they aren't. **c)** No, they isn't.
3	Is Napoleon going to win the war in Russia?	**a)** No, he doesn't. **b)** No, he isn't. **c)** No, he wasn't.

4	Are the Russian people going to burn the city?	**a)** Yes, they are. **b)** Yes, they do. **c)** Yes, we are.
5	Is Pierre going to help poor people?	**a)** Yes, he does. **b)** Yes, he going to. **c)** Yes, he is.
6	Are the French soldiers staying in Moscow?	**a)** No, they aren't. **b)** No, they don't. **c)** No, they aren't staying.
7	Is Natasha going to find true love?	**a)** Yes, she does. **b)** Yes, she is. **c)** Yes, she finds.
8	Is Helene going to truly love Pierre?	**a)** No, she not. **b)** No, she doesn't. **c)** No, she isn’t.
9	Are Pierre and Natasha starting a family?	**a)** Yes, they start. **b)** Yes, they are. **c)** Yes, they do.
10	Is Andrei going to live a long and happy life?	**a)** No, he isn't. **b)** No, he doesn't.

c) No, he wasn't.

12. Will for predictions, spontaneous decisions, offers of help, and promises

Will is used to talk about the future in the following situations:

Predictions (Pr): To say what we think or guess will happen in the future.

Spontaneous Decisions (SD): To talk about a decision we make at the exact moment of speaking.

Offers of Help (O): To offer to do something for someone else.

Promises (Po): To promise that you will or will not do something.

Affirmative

Subject Pronoun	will	Base verb	Examples
I	will ('ll)	help	I **will help** the poor people! **(SD)**
You	will ('ll)	be	You **will be** a great soldier, Andrei. **(Pr)**
He	will ('ll)	attack	He **will attack** Russia with a big army. (**Pr)**
She	will ('ll)	take	She **will take** care of Andrei in the hospital. **(O)**
It	will ('ll)	be	It **will be** a very cold winter. **(Pr)**
We	will ('ll)	burn	We **will bring** more food later. **(Po)**

They	will ('ll)	start	They **will start** a happy family together. **(Pd)**

Negative

Subject Pronoun	**will + not**		**Base verb**	**Examples**
I	will (won’t)	not	marry	I **won't marry** Anatole! **(Po)**
You	will (won’t)	not	survive	You **won't survive** the Russian winter. **(Pr)**
He	will (won’t)	not	leave	He **will not leave** Natasha alone. **(Pr)**
She	will (won’t)	not	see	She **won't see** him again. **(Po)**
It	will (won’t)	not	be	It **will not be** an easy war. **(Pr)**
We	will (won’t)	not	let	We **won't let** Napoleon use our city. **(Po)**
They	will (won’t)	not	forget	They **won't forget** this great lesson. **(Pr)**

Interrogative and short answers

Examples	**Affirmative**	**Negative answer**
Will I **find** true love?	Yes, you will.	No, you won't.
Will you **marry** me?	Yes, I will.	No, I won't.
Will he **win** the war?	Yes, he will.	No, he won't.
Will she **escape** with him?	Yes, she will.	No, she won't.
Will it **snow** in Moscow?	Yes, it will.	No, it won't.

Will we **have** enough food?	Yes, we will.	No, we won't.
Will they **be** happy?	Yes, they will.	No, they won't.

Exercise 12.1

Identify the following sentences as predictions (**PR**), spontaneous decisions (**SD**), offers of help (**O**), or promises (**PO**).

No.	Sentence	Type of sentence
1	You look tired. I will carry your bags.	
2	I think the winter will be extremely cold this year.	
3	I will always love you.	
4	We don't have food. I will buy some right now.	
5	They have no food or weapons. They will leave Russia soon.	
6	You are sick. I will take care of you.	
7	He is a bad person. I will never speak to him again.	
8	It is too dangerous to go out. I will stay home.	
9	They are very happy. They will build a beautiful family.	
10	You need to eat. I will give you my money to buy food.	

Exercise 12.2

Change the following sentences to the negative form.

No.	Affirmative sentence	Negative sentence
1	I **will carry** your bags.	
2	This winter **will be** different.	
3	She **will forget** you.	
4	He **will burn** the city.	
5	His army **will leave** Russia soon.	
6	I **will take** care of you.	
7	I **will talk** to him tomorrow.	
8	I **will fight** for my country.	
9	They **will build** a beautiful	
10	I **will give** you money to buy food.	

Exercise 12.3

Change the sentences in activity 12.2 to the interrogative form.

No.	Sentence
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	

7	
8	
9	
10	

Exercise 12.4

Choose the correct short answer for each question.

No.	Question	Options
1	Will Napoleon win the war in Russia?	**a)** No, he won't. **b)** No, he don't. **c)** No, he isn't.
2	Will Pierre and Natasha start a family?	**a)** Yes, they are. **b)** Yes, they do. **c)** Yes, they will.
3	Will Andrei live a long life?	**a)** No, he won't. **b)** No, he will. **c)** No, he doesn't.
4	Will the Russian people burn Moscow?	**a)** Yes, they do. **b)** Yes, they will. **c)** Yes, they are.
5	Will Helene love Pierre for his kind heart?	**a)** No, she isn't.

		b) No, she doesn't. **c)** No, she won't.
6	Will Anatole escape with Natasha?	**a)** No, he won't. **b)** No, he will not escape. **c)** No, he isn't.
7	Will Pierre help the poor people?	**a)** Yes, he does. **b)** Yes, he will. **c)** Yes, he is.
8	Will the French soldiers have enough food?	**a)** No, they don't. **b)** No, they aren't. **c)** No, they won't.
9	Will Natasha take care of Andrei in the hospital?	**a)** Yes, she will. **b)** Yes, she does. **c)** Yes, she takes.
10	Will Pierre find peace in small things?	**a)** Yes, he is. **b)** Yes, he will. **c)** Yes, he does.

13. Zero and First Conditional with if and when

Zero conditional:

We use the Zero Conditional to talk about **general truths**, **facts**, and **things** that are **always true**.

The result is always the same.

If/When clause: If + Present simple	**Result clause:** Simple present
If you are poor and hungry,	life is very hard.
If you don't study,	you don't learn.
We can use **when** instead of **if** because the result is always true.	
When people break the rules,	they go to prison.

First Conditional:

We use the **First Conditional** to talk about **real** and **possible future situations**.

It describes what **will probably happen** in the future as a result of an action.

If clause: If + Present simple	**Result clause:** will + base verb
If it rains,	I will stay home.

If it doesn't rain,	I won't stay home.

We use **when** when we are **absolutely sure the situation will happen**.

When I see him,	I will talk to him.

Remember: zero conditional vs. first conditional

Use the **zero conditional** for things that are always true (facts and general truths).

The form is: **if / when + present simple, present simple**.

Example: If you heat ice, it melts.

Use the **first conditional** for real, possible situations in the future.

The form is: **if / when + present simple, will + base verb**.

Example: If it rains, I will stay home.

Exercise 13.1

Identify the following sentences as **Zero conditional** (**0**), or **First conditional** (**1**).

No.	Sentence	Type of conditional
1	If you don't water plants, they die.	
2	If it rains tomorrow, we won't go to the park.	
3	When people do not sleep enough, they get tired.	

4	If you don't study hard, you won't pass the final exam.
5	If you mix red and blue, you don't get green.
6	When the sun goes down, it gets dark.
7	If she doesn't accept the job offer, she won't move to LA.
8	If you eat too much candy, you get a stomachache.
9	When I finish my work early, I will call you.
10	If we don't leave right now, we will miss the train.

Exercise 13.2

Write **zero conditional** sentences by connecting the clauses below. You can use **If** or **When** at the beginning of the sentence.

No.	Clauses	Zero conditional
1	People do not eat healthy food. / They don't feel well.	
2	A houseplant doesn't get water. / It dies.	
3	You press this button. / The machine turns on.	
4	It doesn't snow. / The roads are not slippery.	
5	You mix yellow and blue. / You get green.	
6	Children don't play outside. / They don't get dirty.	
7	The sun rises. / A new day begins.	

8	You don't put milk in the fridge. / It goes sour.	
9	You exercise regularly. / You stay healthy.	
10	You touch a hot stove. / You burn your hand.	

Exercise 13.3

Write **first conditional** sentences by connecting the clauses below.

No.	Clauses	First conditional
1	You don't hurry. / You miss the bus.	
2	I don't have enough money. / I do not buy a new phone.	
3	She works hard. / She gets a promotion.	
4	You don't call him tonight. / He is not happy.	
5	We leave early. / We avoid the traffic.	
6	You forget your umbrella. / You get wet.	
7	The weather is not nice tomorrow. / We do not go to the beach.	
8	He studies tonight. / He does well on the test.	
9	You don't tell the truth. / People do not trust you.	

10	I see her at the meeting. / I give her your message.

Exercise 13.4

Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses to write sentences in the **Zero (0)** or **First conditional (1)**.

No.	Sentence
1	If the alarm (not / ring), I (not / wake) up on time. **(0)**
2	If you (drop) a glass on the floor, it (break). **(0)**
3	If she (not / invite) me to the party, I (not / go). **(1)**
4	When the temperature (drop) below zero, water (freeze). **(0)**
5	If we _____ (not / save) enough money, we _____ (not / travel) to Japan next year. **(1)**
6	When you (smile), people usually (smile) back at you. **(0)**
7	If it (not / rain) tomorrow, we (have) a barbecue. **(1)**
8	When babies (not / be) hungry, they (not / cry). **(0)**
9	If you (not / wear) a jacket, you (catch) a cold tonight. **(1)**
10	If they _____ (win) the next game, they _____ (be) the champions. **(1)**

14. Modals of Possibility: may, might, could, and can

May expresses a **real or fairly strong possibility**.

It is more **formal** and a little more **certain** than might.

Type	Structure	Example
Affirmative	Subject + **may** + base verb	He **may** be at home.

Negative	Subject + **may not** + base	He **may** not come.
Interrogative (formal/rare)	**May** + subject + base verb?	**May** she join us?

Might expresses a **weak or less certain possibility**.

It is more **uncertain** than **may**.

Type	**Structure**	**Example**
Affirmative	Subject + **might** + base verb	He **might** be busy.
Negative	Subject + **might not** + base verb	He **might not** come.
Interrogative	Might + subject + base verb?	**Might** he be at home?*

* Might in **questions** is **very rare, formal, and unnatural.**

More natural option: Do you think he **might** be at home?

Could expresses **general possibility** or **possible situations**.

It often suggests **different options or ideas**.

Type	**Structure**	**Example**
Affirmative	Subject + **could** + base verb	We **could** go to the beach.
Negative	Subject + **could not** (**couldn't**) + base verb	It **could** not work.

Interrogative	**Could** + subject + base verb?	**Could** it rain later?*****

***** Could is more common in questions for **requests/permission**

More natural option: Do you think it **could** rain later?

Can expresses **real possibility** or **things that are sometimes true**.

It does **NOT** usually describe a **specific future possibility**.

Type	**Structure**	**Example**
Affirmative (General possibility)	Subject + **can** + base verb	It **can** be very hot here.
Negative (Strong impossibility)	Subject + **cannot** (**can't**) + base verb	This **can't** be true.
Interrogative (Used for general possibility or doubt)	**Can** + subject + base verb?	**Can** it be dangerous?

Exercise 14.1

Complete each sentence with **may**, **might**, **could**, or **can**. Use the clue in parentheses to help you choose the correct modal verb.

No.	Question
1	She _____ not understand French. She is new in the country. *(real possibility)*
2	He _____ be at home, but I'm not sure. *(weak possibility)*
3	This road _____ be dangerous at night. *(sometimes true)*
4	They _____ visit us later. They have time today. *(real possibility)*
5	I _____ be wrong, but I think Gatsby loves Daisy. *(weak possibility)*
6	Life _____ be unfair sometimes. *(sometimes true)*
7	We _____ go to the party tonight. It is a good idea. *(general possibility)*
8	She _____ not come to the meeting. She is very busy. *(real possibility)*
9	People _____ change over time. *(general possibility)*
10	He _____ be tired after the long trip. *(weak possibility)*
11	This story _____ teach us an important lesson. *(general possibility)*
12	They _____ not understand the situation. *(weak possibility)*
13	Money _____ not bring happiness. *(sometimes true)*
14	She _____ still love him. It is possible. *(real possibility)*

15 Accidents _____ happen when people drive fast. *(sometimes true)*

16 He _____ find a better job in the future. *(general possibility)*

17 She _____ be at the party, but I don't see her. *(weak possibility)*

18 People _____ make mistakes in life. *(sometimes true)*

19 They _____ move to another city next year. *(real possibility)*

20 This plan _____ work if we try. *(general possibility)*

15. Modals of Ability: can, could, and be able to

Can expresses **ability in the present**.

Type	Structure	Example
Affirmative	Subject + **can** + base verb	She **can** swim.
Negative	Subject + **cannot** (**can't**) + base verb	She **can't** swim.
Interrogative	**Can** + subject + base verb?	**Can** she swim?

Could expresses **ability in the past**.

Type	Structure	Example

Affirmative	Subject + **could** + base verb	He **could** read at age five.
Negative	Subject + **could not** (couldn't) + base verb	He **couldn't** read before school.
Interrogative	**Could** + subject + base verb?	**Could** he read at age five?

Be able to expresses **ability in different tenses** (present, past, future).

Present ability

Type	**Structure**	**Example**
Affirmative	Subject + **am/is/are** + **able to** + base verb	She **is able to** drive.
Negative	Subject + **am/is/are** + **not** + **able to** + base verb	She **is not able to** drive.
Interrogative	**Am/Is/Are** + subject + **able to** + base verb?	**Is** she **able to** drive?

Past ability

Type	**Structure**	**Example**
Affirmative	Subject + **was/were** + **able to** + base verb	She **was able to** finish the race.
Negative	Subject + **was/were** + **not** + able	She **was not able to** finish the

	to + base verb	race.
Interrogative	**Was**/**Were** + subject + **able to** + base verb?	Was **she able to** finish the race?

Future ability

Type	**Structure**	**Example**
Affirmative	Subject + **will be able to** + base verb	She **will be able to** drive soon.
Negative	Subject + **will not (won't) be able to** + base verb	She **will not be able to** drive soon.
Interrogative	**Will** + subject + **be able to** + base verb?	Will **she be able to** drive soon?

Exercise 15.1

Complete each sentence with **can**, **could**, or the correct form of **be able to**. Use the clue in parentheses to help you choose the correct form.

No.	**Question**
1	She _____ swim very well. She practices every day. *(present ability)*
2	He _____ read when he was four years old. *(past ability)*
3	They _____ finish the project tomorrow. *(future ability)*

4 I _____ not understand the teacher yesterday. *(past ability)*

5 We _____ speak English in class. *(present ability)*

6 She _____ not come to the party next week. *(future ability)*

7 He _____ play the piano when he was a child. *(past ability)*

8 I _____ help you right now. *(present ability)*

9 They _____ solve the problem after some time. *(future ability)*

10 She _____ not ride a bike when she was younger. *(past ability)*

11 We _____ see the mountains from here. *(present ability)*

12 He _____ not finish the test on time yesterday. *(specific past situation)*

13 I _____ travel alone next year. *(future ability)*

14 She _____ cook very well. *(present ability)*

15 They _____ not understand the lesson last week. *(past ability)*

16 We _____ find a solution soon. *(future ability)*

17 He _____ run very fast when he was young. *(past ability)*

18 I _____ use this computer easily. *(present ability)*

19 She _____ attend the meeting tomorrow. *(future ability)*

20 They _____ fix the car after some practice. *(future ability)*

16. Modals of Obligation and Prohibition: must and have to

Must expresses **strong obligation** or **personal responsibility**.

It can also express **rules** or **moral duty**.

Type	**Structure**	**Example**
Affirmative	Subject + **must** + base verb	You **must** tell the truth.
Negative (**Prohibition**)	Subject + **must not** (**mustn't**) + base verb	You **must not** lie.
Interrogative	**Must** + subject + base verb?	**Must** we follow the rules?

Have to expresses **obligation from rules, laws,** or **situations**.

Type	**Structure**	**Example**
Affirmative	Subject + **have/has to** + base verb	She **has** to follow the law.
Negative (**No obligation**)	Subject + **do/does not have to** + base verb	She **doesn't have** to stay.

Interrogative	**Do**/**Does** + subject + **have to** + base verb?	**Do** we **have** to go?

Exercise 16.1

Complete each sentence with **must**, **must not**, **have to**, or **don't**/**doesn't have to**. Use the clue in parentheses to help you choose the correct form.

No.	Question
1	People _____ treat others with respect. *(moral obligation)*
2	You _____ lie in court. *(prohibition)*
3	We _____ follow the law in our community. *(rule)*
4	A good person _____ help others in need. *(moral obligation)*
5	You _____ hurt someone because you are angry. *(prohibition)*
6	Students _____ listen carefully in class. *(rule)*
7	You _____ agree with everyone. *(no obligation)*
8	People _____ show empathy to understand others. *(moral obligation)*
9	We _____ judge people too quickly. *(prohibition)*
10	Citizens _____ respect the law. *(rule)*

11 A lawyer _____ defend their client fairly. *(moral obligation)*

12 You _____ say bad things about others. *(prohibition)*

13 We _____ help people if they ask for support. *(moral obligation)*

14 Students _____ wear a uniform at school. *(rule)*

15 You _____ come if you don't want to. *(no obligation)*

16 People _____ be honest in difficult situations. *(moral obligation)*

17 We _____ ignore injustice. *(prohibition)*

18 Children _____ follow their parents' rules. *(rule)*

19 You _____ stay silent if something is wrong. *(prohibition)*

20 People _____ forgive others to live in peace. *(moral obligation)*

---

17. Modals of Advice: Should and Ought to

Should expresses **advice**, **recommendations**, or **what is a good idea to do**.

Type	**Structure**	**Example**
Affirmative	Subject + **should** + base verb	You **should** be honest.
Negative	Subject + **should not** (**shouldn't**) + base verb	You **shouldn't** lie.

Interrogative	**Should** + subject + base verb?	**Should** I tell the truth?

Ought to expresses **advice** or **moral duty or advice**. It is much less common than should.

It is similar to **should**, but slightly more **formal**.

Type	**Structure**	**Example**
Affirmative	Subject + **ought to** + base verb	You **ought to** be kind.
Negative	Subject + **ought not to** (**oughtn't to**) + base verb	You **ought not to** judge others.
Interrogative	**Ought** + subject + **to** + base verb?	**Ought** we **to** help others?*

* Ought to in questions is **very rare.**

More natural option: Should we help others?

Tip!

Should is much more common than **ought to.** Native speakers prefer **should** in everyday speech, especially in questions and negatives.

Should is **natural** in questions and negatives.

Should is often softer, more like a **recommendation**.

Ought to carries a stronger sense of **moral duty** or the right thing to do.

Exercise 17.1

Complete each sentence with **should**, **shouldn't**, **ought to**, or **ought not to**. Use the clue in parentheses to help you choose the correct form.

No.	Question
1	You _____ be yourself, even if others don't understand you. *(general advice)*
2	People _____ pretend to be someone they are not. *(negative advice – common)*
3	We _____ show kindness to people who feel alone. *(moral duty)*
4	You _____ follow others just to be accepted. *(negative advice – common)*
5	_____ I tell the truth, even if it is difficult? *(advice question – common)*
6	We _____ ignore people who need help. *(moral duty – negative)*
7	You _____ speak honestly about your emotions. *(general advice)*
8	People _____ judge others by appearances. *(negative advice – common)*
9	_____ we try to understand others before judging them? *(advice question – common)*
10	You _____ hide your true personality. *(negative advice – common)*
11	A good friend _____ support others in difficult times. *(moral duty)*

12 People _____ care too much about what others think. *(negative advice – common)*

13 _____ I trust my feelings in this situation? *(advice question – common)*

14 We _____ forget to be kind in a difficult world. *(moral duty – negative)*

15 A person _____ stay true to their values. *(moral duty)*

16 You _____ lie to make people like you. *(negative advice – common)*

17 We _____ help others feel accepted. *(general advice)*

18 People _____ lose their identity to fit in. *(moral duty – negative)*

19 _____ I be more honest with myself? *(advice question – common)*

20 We _____ show compassion in a superficial world. *(moral duty)*

---

18. Verb Patterns: like/love/hate/enjoy + -ing (for preferences)

We use **like, love, hate, and enjoy + verb (-ing)** to describe **general feelings about activities.**

These verbs are followed by a **gerund (-ing form)**.

Verb	Structure	Meaning	Example

like	like + verb-ing	general positive feeling	I **like** swimming.
love	love + verb-ing	strong positive feeling	I **love** reading.
enjoy	enjoy + verb-ing	positive feeling	I **enjoy** dancing.
hate	hate + verb-ing	strong negative feeling	I **hate** waiting.

-ING vs TO + verb

Form	Use	Example
verb + **-ing**	general feeling about an activity	I **like** reading.
to + **verb**	specific preference, habit, or situation	I **like** to read at night.
enjoy + **-ing**	only -ing verbs	I **enjoy** read**ing**.

Note:

In many cases, both forms are possible, but the meaning can be slightly different.

Exercise 18.1

Complete each sentence with the correct **-ing** form of the verb in parentheses.

No.	Question
1	I like _____ (read) books at night.
2	She enjoys _____ (dance) with her friends.
3	They love _____ (watch) movies on weekends.
4	He hates _____ (wait) for the bus.
5	We enjoy _____ (play) soccer after school.
6	I don’t like _____ (wake) up early.
7	She loves _____ (cook) for her family.
8	He doesn’t enjoy _____ (study) math.
9	Do you like _____ (listen) to music?
10	They hate _____ (clean) the house.
11	I enjoy _____ (travel) to new places.
12	She doesn’t like _____ (run) in the morning.
13	We love _____ (eat) pizza.
14	Do you enjoy _____ (learn) English?

15 He hates _____ (do) homework.

16 I like _____ (draw) pictures.

17 She enjoys _____ (read) stories.

18 They don't like _____ (work) late.

19 Do you love _____ (play) video games?

20 We hate _____ (get) up early on Sundays.

---

19. Would for Polite Requests, Offers, and Invitations

Would for Polite Requests

We use **would** to **ask** someone to do something **politely**.

Type	**Structure**	**Examples**
Affirmative	Subject + **would** + base verb	I would like to borrow this book.
Interrogative	**Would** + subject + base verb?	Would you explain this rule again?
Short answers		- Yes, of course. - Sure. - Sorry, I can't right now.

Very polite request

Type	**Structure**	**Example**

Interrogative	**Would** you **mind** + verb-**ing**?	**Would** you **mind** help**ing** me with my English homework?
Possible Affirmative responses		- Not at all. - No problem
Possible Negative response		- Sorry, I can't.

Would for Offers

We use **would** to **offer** something **politely**.

Type	**Structure**	**Examples**
Affirmative	Subject + **would** + base verb	I **would** be happy to help.
Negative	Subject + **would not** (**wouldn't**) + base verb	I **wouldn't** mind sharing my class notes with you.
Interrogative	**Would** + subject + base verb?	**Would** you like a cup of coffee?
Possible Affirmative responses		- Yes, please. - That would be great, thank you. - Sure, thanks.
Possible Negative response		- No, thank you. - No, I'm okay, thanks. - I'm fine, thank you.

Would for Invitations

We use **would** to **invite** someone **politely**.

Type	**Structure**	**Examples**
Interrogative	**Would** you **like** + to + verb?	**Would** you **like** to come to my party?
Affirmative responses		- Yes, I'd love to. - Sure, that sounds great. - Of course!
Negative responses		- I'm sorry, I can't. - I'd love to, but I'm busy. - Maybe another time.

Exercise 19.1

Read the following sentences. Choose the correct word from the box to complete the polite request, offer, or invitation. You can use some words more than once.

mind	**be**	**helping**	**would**	**to**	**at**
love	**playing**	**course**	**can't**	**like**	**you**

No.	Sentence
1	_____ you like some water after your presentation?
2	I _____ like to order a sandwich from the campus cafeteria, please.
3	Would you _____ helping me with this English assignment?
4	Would you like _____ join our study group at the library?
5	**A:** Would you like to come to my party on Saturday? **B:** I'd _____ to!
6	**A:** _____ you lend me your dictionary for a minute? **B:** Yes, of course.
7	I would _____ happy to show you around the campus.
8	Would you like me _____ check your spelling?
9	**A:** Would you mind passing me that notebook? **B:** Not _____ all. Here it is.
10	**A:** Would you like some more tea? **B:** No, thank _____. I have enough.
11	**A:** Would you like to go to the cinema tonight? **B:** I'm sorry, I _____. I have an exam tomorrow.

12 We _____ like to invite you to the university graduation dinner.

13 Would you mind not _____ your music so loudly in the computer lab?

14 **A:** Would you help me carry these heavy books?

B: Yes, of _____.

15 _____ you like me to open the window?

16 **A:** Would you mind _____ me practice my pronunciation?

B: No problem.

17 Would you _____ to have lunch together after class?

18 **A:** Would you like to study together?

B: Sorry, I _____. I have a meeting with my professor.

19 _____ you like an apple or an orange with your snack?

20 I wouldn't _____ staying a few minutes late to finish this exercise.

SECTION 2: BUILDING BLOCKS

1. Definite, Indefinite articles, and No article

Indefinite Articles: a / an

We use **a** and **an** with singular nouns when we talk about a person or thing for the first time, or for one of many things. They refer to one.

Rule	Explanation	Examples
Use 'a'	Use **a** before a word that starts with a consonant sound. (b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z)	I will eat **a** sandwich for lunch. He bought **a** new camera yesterday.
Use 'an'	Use **an** before a word that starts with a vowel sound. (a, e, i, o, u)	She ate **an** apple after the game. I will book **an** island tour.
Exceptions (Sound is important!)	Sometimes a vowel starts with a consonant sound, and a consonant starts with a vowel sound.	**an** hour *(the **h** is **silent**)*: I run for **an** hour every day. **a** uniform *(the **u** sounds like 'y')*: They will wear **a** uniform.

Definite Article: The

We use the definite article the to refer to a specific item or items.

Use *the* for...	Examples
Specific things	- Please pass **the** salt. - I will pack **the** red suitcase.
Unique things	**- The** sun was very hot on our trip. - **The** internet is great for learning.
Second mention	I bought a tennis racket. **The** racket is very light.
Common places	- They go to **the** park every day. - We have to go to **the** bank.
Musical instruments	- She plays **the** violin. - I play **the** drums every afternoon.
Geographical features	**- The** Nile is a famous river. - **The** Atlantic Ocean is very large.
Groups or classes of people and things	**- The** elderly need special care. - **The** rich travel a lot.

When NOT to use The: (Zero Article):

We do not use the article **the** in the following situations.

Do NOT use 'the' for...	Examples
General Plural Nouns	**Pirates** are dangerous. *(General fact)* **Apples** are sweet. *(General fact)*
Names of People	**Wendy** lives in a big house. **Peter Pan** is a special boy.

Cities, Countries & Continents	They traveled to **Greece**. **Spain** is in Europe. **New York** is very cold in December. **Exceptions:** Countries that are plural in form or include words like states, kingdom or Republic - **The** United States of American - **The** United Kingdom - Democratic Republic of **the** Congo
Nouns without a plural when speaking in general	Water is indispensable for life. Music is relaxing.
Abstract nouns when speaking in general	Love is important. Happiness is essential.
Meals, languages and sports	Lunch is at noon. They study French every day. He likes golf.

Exercise 1.1

Complete the following sentences with: a, an, the, or NA (No Article): **a**, **an**, **the**, or **NA** (No Article).

No.	Sentence

1 I usually eat ____ breakfast at 7:00 AM before my morning run.

2 We booked our cheap flight tickets on ____ internet.

3 He plays ____ golf with his friends on Saturday mornings.

4 My sister will practice ____ drums in her room tonight.

5 The fast train to the city will arrive in exactly ____ hour.

6 After work, I usually go to ____ gym to do my exercise routine.

7 I packed ____ delicious sandwich for our picnic at the beach.

8 Next year, my family will travel to ____ Greece for our vacation.

9 They visited ____ United Kingdom last winter and loved the museums.

10 I bought a new tennis racket yesterday. ____ racket is very light!

11 The flight attendant wears ____ clean uniform on every flight.

12 The large cruise ship sailed across ____ Atlantic Ocean.

13 ____ vacations are very fun and relaxing for everyone.

14 They will study ____ Spanish before their big trip to Madrid.

15 ____ music always helps me relax on long international flights.

16 Please pass ____ pepper; this soup needs a little more flavor.

17 She ate ____ apple and drank some water after her swimming lesson.

18 ____ rich travel to expensive hotels around the world.

19 ____ sun was very hot on the volleyball court yesterday.

20 My brother is ____ honest player; he always follows all the rules.

---

2. Adverbs of Frequency

We use **adverbs of frequency** to say **how often** we do something.

Adverb	How often?	Example Sentence from the Stories
Always	**100%** (Every time)	I **always** wake up feeling energetic.
Usually	**90%** (Most of the time)	She **usually** drinks coffee in the morning.
Often	**70%** (Many times)	They are **often** tired after a long day of classes.
Sometimes	**50%** (Some of the time)	He **sometimes** feels stressed before a test.
Rarely	**10%** (Not very often)	We **rarely** go to bed after midnight.
Hardly ever	**5%** (Almost never)	I am **hardly ever** bored when I read a good book.

Never	**0%** (Not at any time)	My brother is **never** angry in the morning.

Position of Adverbs of Frequency

Rule	Structure	Examples
Verb 'To Be'	Subject + **BE** + **Adverb**	She **is always** happy. They **are never** late.
Other Verbs	Subject + **Adverb** + **Verb**	We **often play** basketball. He **never goes** swimming.

Exercise 2.1

Complete the following sentences using the correct **adverb of frequency** based on the percentage in parentheses.

No.	Sentence
1	I am ____ excited to see my friends on campus. (100%)
2	She ____ brushes her teeth right after breakfast. (90%)
3	We ____ feel tired after a long day of studying. (70%)
4	He is ____ worried about his English exams. (50%)
5	They ____ go to sleep late during the week. (10%)

6 I am ____ sad on bright, sunny days. (5%)

7 My professor is ____ angry in the morning. (0%)

8 The students ____ smile when they get good grades. (100%)

9 I am ____ hungry at 12:00 PM. (90%)

10 She ____ listens to music to relax her mind. (70%)

11 We ____ take a walk in the evening to clear our heads. (50%)

12 He is ____ late for his favorite class. (10%)

13 I ____ watch TV late at night because I need to sleep. (5%)

14 They ____ eat a heavy breakfast before running. (0%)

15 You are ____ kind and helpful to everyone. (100%)

16 My classmates ____ do their homework after school. (90%)

17 I am ____ sleepy during the afternoon lectures. (70%)

18 She ____ feels nervous before a big presentation. (50%)

19 We are ____ stressed on the weekends. (10%)

20 He ____ forgets his keys at home. (0%)

---

3. Prepositions of Time

We use prepositions of time to say when something happens.

Preposition	Use	Examples
In	Months, years, seasons, centuries, long periods	**in** January, **in** 2023, **in** the 1990s **in** spring, **in** summer, **in** fall **in** winter **in** the morning, **in** the afternoon, **in** the evening
On	Days and dates	**on** Monday, **on** July 4th **on** my birthday
At	Specific times, holiday periods	**at** 3:00 PM, **at** noon, **at** night, **at** Christmas

Exercise 3.1

Complete the following sentences using the correct preposition of time: **in**, **on**, or **at**.

No.	Sentence
1	I love to walk in the forest the morning to listen to the birds.
2	The curious boy found a strange new bug ____ Tuesday.
3	We looked at the sky ____ night and asked many questions.
4	Beautiful green leaves grow on the trees ____ spring.

5 She always paints her unique pictures ____ Sundays.

6 A little bird started to sing outside my window ____ 6:00 AM.

7 He traveled alone to the mountains ____ 2022 to learn about himself.

8 They planted a very special tree ____ April 22nd.

9 The leaves change to beautiful colors ____ October.

10 I often sit by the river and think about the world ____ noon.

4. Demonstrative Pronouns

We use demonstratives to **point** to people or things.

Pronoun	Quantity (How many?)	Distance (Where?)	Examples
This	Singular (1)	Near (Here)	**This** is my new laptop.
That	Singular (1)	Far (There)	**That** is my dream house on the hill.
These	Plural (2 or more)	Near (Here)	**These** are my house keys.
Those	Plural (2 or more)	Far (There)	**Those** are the new cars I want to buy.

Exercise 4.1

Complete the following sentences with the correct the demonstrative pronoun to fill in the blank: **this**, **that**, **these**, or **those**.

No.	Sentence
1	Look at _____ beautiful shoes in the store window across the street!
2	_____ phone in my hand is very fast.
3	Did you see _____ big houses far away near the mountains?
4	I do not like _____ old papers right here on my desk.
5	_____ list of life goals on my notebook is very important to me.
6	Look at _____ beautiful car driving over there.
7	_____ new jacket I am wearing right now keeps me very warm.
8	Who left _____ dirty cups on the table over there?
9	_____ person across the room is my new boss.
10	I can take great photos with _____ camera I am holding.

5. Possessive Adjectives

We use possessive adjectives to show that something **belongs** to someone. They always come **before** a noun.

Subject Pronoun	Possessive Adjective	Examples

I	my	This is **my** favorite coffee cup.
You	your	What is **your** biggest goal in life?
He	his	**His** new apartment is very nice.
She	her	She left **her** purse on the table.
It	its	The dog likes **its** comfortable bed.
We	our	**Our** dream is to travel to Japan.
They	their	**Their** children are very smart.

Exercise 5.1

Complete the following sentences using the correct possessive adjective: **my**, **your**, **his**, **her**, **its**, **our**, or **their**.

No.	Sentence
1	I have a car. car is black.
2	She wants to buy a house. _____ dream is to have a big garden.
3	We live in a small town. _____ town is very quiet.
4	The students passed all their exams. _____ parents are very happy.
5	John loves his job. _____ office is in the city center.
6	The bird is in the tree. _____ feathers are blue.

7 Do you like _____ new shoes? I just bought them!

8 Excuse me, is this _____ jacket? You left it on the chair.

9 My wife and I love _____ new television.

10 The company wants to improve _____ products this year.

6. Possessive Nouns

We use possessive nouns to show that something **belongs** to a person or a thing. We usually use an apostrophe (**'**) and an **s**.

Rule	Explanation	Examples
Singular Noun	Add **'s** to a singular noun.	The **teacher's** laptop
Singular Noun ending in -s	Add **'s** to most singular nouns that end in **-s**.	**Chris's** apartment
Plural Noun ending in -s	Add only an apostrophe (**'**) to a plural noun that ends in **-s**.	The **parents'** house
Irregular Plural Noun	Add **'s** to a plural noun that does not end in **-s**.	The **children's** toys
Two or more people (share**d)**	If two people own one thing together, add **'s** to the last name only.	**Tom and Mary's** car

Exercise 6.1

Rewrite the following incorrect phrases with **possessive nouns**.

No.	Incorrect Phrase	Correct Phrase

1	the book of my brother
2	the car of my parents
3	the goals of the students
4	the house of Sarah
5	the toys of the children
6	the phone of my sister
7	the dog of Chris
8	the dream of my friend
9	the apartment of Tom and Jane
10	the computer of the boss

7. Possessive Pronouns

Possessive pronouns are words used to indicate **ownership** or **possession** of something without repeating the noun.

Subject Pronoun	Possessive Pronouns	Examples
I	mine	The black wallet is **mine**.
You	yours	Is the new computer **yours**?
He	his	The blue jacket is **his**.
She	hers	The modern apartment is **hers**.
It	its	*Rarely used in sentences*

We	ours	The victory and success are **ours**.
They	theirs	That big television is **theirs**.

Exercise 7.1

Complete the following sentences using the correct possessive pronoun: **mine, yours, his, hers, ours,** or **theirs.**

No.	Sentence
1	I bought a new car yesterday. The car is .
2	These are not my keys. Are they _____?
3	My brother got a new phone. The phone is _____.
4	She paid for the expensive watch. The watch is _____.
5	We worked hard for this business. The business is _____.
6	My parents bought a beautiful house. The house is _____.
7	You forgot your umbrella, so you can take _____.
8	Mary found a ring. I think it is _____.
9	John and I share a dream. The dream is _____.
10	The students left their backpacks here. Those bags are .

8. Object Pronouns

We use object pronouns to **replace nouns** that receive the action of a verb or follow a preposition. They always go **after** the verb or the preposition.

Subject Pronoun	Object Pronoun	Example
I	me	My friend gave **me** a nice gift.
You	you	I want to help **you** with your goals.
He	him	She called **him** to talk about the project.
She	her	We visited **her** at her new house.
It	it	I liked that new phone, so I bought **it**.
We	us	The teacher invited **us** to the meeting.
They	them	I saw **them** at the supermarket.

Exercise 8.1

Complete the following sentences using the correct object pronouns: **me, you**, **him**, **her**, **it**, **us**, or **them**.

No.	Sentence
1	My sister has a new job. I am very proud of _____.
2	This is a great book. Did you read _____?
3	My friends and I are going to the cinema. Do you want to come with _____?
4	John forgot his laptop. Please give this to _____.
5	I cannot find my keys. Did you see _____?

6 You are my best friend. I trust _____.

7 Please help _____. I don't understand this math problem.

8 The dog is hungry. Give _____ some food.

9 We saw Sarah and Tom at the mall, and we said hello to _____.

10 My father works hard. I respect _____ a lot.

9. Reflexive Pronouns

We use reflexive pronouns when the **subject** and the **object** of a sentence are the **same** person or thing.

Subject Pronoun	**Reflexive Pronoun**	**Example**
I	myself	I bought **myself** a new computer.
You (singular)	yourself	Did you make **yourself** some coffee?
He	himself	He taught **himself** to play the guitar.
She	herself	She promised **herself** to reach her goals.
It	itself	The smart oven turns **itself** off.
We	ourselves	We built the wooden table **ourselves**.
You (plural)	yourselves	You all need to prepare **yourselves** for the real world.
They	themselves	They bought **themselves** an expensive trip.

Exercise 9.1

Complete the following sentences using the correct reflexive pronouns: **myself**, **yourself**, **himself**, **herself**, **itself**, **ourselves**, **yourselves**, or **themselves**.

No.	Sentence
1	I want to learn a new language by _____.
2	She looked at _____ in the mirror before the job interview.
3	We cooked the dinner _____.
4	The cat cleans _____ every morning.
5	They enjoyed _____ at the concert last night.
6	He cut _____ while he was preparing lunch.
7	Make sure you ask _____ what your real goals are. (Singular)
8	Kids, please behave _____ at the museum! (Plural)
9	I found _____ a comfortable chair in the library.
10	My parents painted their new bedroom _____.

10. Question Words

We use question words to ask for specific information.

Question Word	Use	Examples
What	Things, actions, or information	**What** do you usually eat for breakfast? **What** will you do after work today?
Who	People or characters	**Who** is your best friend? **Who** cooked this delicious dinner?
Where	Places or locations	**Where** is the new Italian restaurant? **Where** did you find my missing keys?
When	Time, days, or dates	**When** do you wake up on Sundays? **When** will the museum open tomorrow?
Why	Reasons	**Why** did you wake up so early? **Why** do you like this coffee shop so much?
Which	Choices or alternatives	**Which** jacket is yours, the red one or the blue one? **Which** supermarket will we visit later?
How	Manner, feelings, or condition	**How** do you make this delicious chocolate cake? **How** did you go to the hospital yesterday?
Whose	Possession (who owns something)	**Whose** backpack is this? **Whose** car was that?

Exercise 10.1

Complete the following questions using the correct question words: **what**, **who**, **where**, **when**, **why**, **which**, **how**, or **whose**.

No.	Question
1	_____ will you cook for dinner tonight?
2	_____ is the best doctor in this hospital?
3	_____ did you buy those delicious apples?
4	_____ do you usually wake up on weekends?
5	_____ did you leave the restaurant early yesterday?
6	_____ ice cream do you prefer, chocolate or vanilla?
7	_____ do you make your coffee in the morning?
8	_____ beautiful blue car is that?
9	_____ did you do at the park last Sunday?
10	_____ will they build the new library?

11. Adverbs of Manner

We use adverbs of manner to describe how an action is done.

Rule	Use	Examples
Forming adverbs	Most adverbs of manner are formed by adding **-ly** to an adjective.	slow → slow**ly** quick → quick**ly**
Adjectives ending in -y	Change **-y** to **-i** and add **-ly**.	happy → happ**ily** easy → eas**ily**
Adjectives ending in -ic	Add **-ally** (not just -ly).	basic → basic**ally** tragic → tragic**ally**
Adjectives ending in -le	Drop the **-e** and add **-y**.	simple → simp**ly** terrible → terrib**ly**
Irregular adverbs	Some adverbs are **irregular** and do not follow the -ly rule.	good → **well** fast → **fast** hard → **hard**
Same form (adjective = adverb)	Some words don't change form when used as adverbs.	He is a **fast** runner. (**adjective**) He runs **fast**. (**adverb)**
Position of adverbs		
After the verb	Adverbs of manner usually go	She sings **beautifully**.

	after the main verb.	He works **hard**.
After an object	If the verb has an **object**, the adverb goes **after the object**.	She writes stories **creatively**. I will finish my project **perfectly**.
Not before adjectives or nouns	Adverbs of manner **cannot** describe nouns or adjectives.	**X** He is a slowly reader. ✓ He is a **slow** reader.
Emphasis	Sometimes, for emphasis, adverbs can go at the beginning or end of a sentence.	**Carefully**, she wrote her goals in the notebook. **Confidently**, he spoke in front of the class.

Exercise 11.1

Write the **adverb** form of the following adjectives

1	slow	**11**	confident
2	quick	**12**	perfect
3	bad	**13**	clear
4	careful	**14**	brave
5	quiet	**15**	creative
6	loud	**16**	good
7	happy	**17**	fast
8	easy	**18**	hard

9	fluent	**19**	successful
10	patient	**20**	simple

Exercise 11.2

Put the words in the right order to write sentences with **adverbs of manner**.

No.	Scrambled Words	Correct Sentence
1	learns / quickly / she / English	
2	piano / well / the / played / he	
3	hard / will / for / my / study / exams / I	
4	read / the / carefully / students / book	
5	fluently / spoke / teacher / Spanish / the	
6	easily / math / solved / problem / the / she	
7	goals / confidently / will / achieve / you / your	
8	patiently / listened / to / the / they / instructions	
9	writes / creatively / stories / new / he	

10 fast / types / on / computer / the / Maria

12. Countable and Uncountable Nouns

Countable nouns are things we can count because they have a singular and plural form (one, two, three, etc.), and **uncountable nouns** are things we cannot count directly (like water or rice).

Type	Rule	Examples
Countable	You can count them (1, 2, 3...).	Apple → 5 Apples Carrot → 3 Carrots
	Can be Plural.	Egg → 12 Eggs
Uncountable	You cannot count them directly.	Water (**not** waters)
	Usually liquids, powders, or masses.	Rice (**not** rices) Bread (**not** breads)
	NO Plural	Sugar (**not** sugars)

Exercise 12.1

Read the following nouns. Decide if they are countable or uncountable. Write **CN** for countable and **UN** for uncountable nouns.

1	tomato	**11**	notebook
2	milk	**12**	water

3	dollar	**13**	bag
4	money	**14**	cheese
5	pencil	**15**	dictionary
6	homework	**16**	rice
7	banana	**17**	exam
8	bread	**18**	time
9	student	**19**	customer
10	information	**20**	sugar

13. Quantifiers

We use quantifiers to talk about the **amount** or **quantity** of something. We use them before a noun.

Quantifier	Use (Countable / Uncountable)	Sentence Type	Examples
some	Countable (Plural) & Uncountable	Affirmative (and polite requests)	I will buy **some** apples at the supermarket. Can I have **some** water, please?
any	Countable (Plural) & Uncountable	Negative & Questions	I didn't buy **any** milk at the store. Do you have **any** questions about the lesson?
much	Uncountable	Negative & Questions	We didn't spend **much** money on clothes. Did the teacher give us **much** homework?

many	Countable (Plural)	Affirmative, Negative, Questions	She read **many** books for her English class. I didn't see **many** students in the library.
a lot of	Countable (Plural) & Uncountable	Affirmative (mostly)	He always eats **a lot of** pizza for dinner. We will need **a lot of** notebooks for school.
a few	Countable (Plural)	Affirmative	I have **a few** pencils in my school bag. She will buy **a few** new dresses tomorrow.
a little	Uncountable	Affirmative	I need **a little** help with this math problem. Please put **a little** sugar in my tea.
How much	Uncountable	Questions	**How much** time do we have for the test? **How much** did that jacket cost?
How many	Countable (Plural)	Questions	**How many** tomatoes will you buy? **How many** students are there in the classroom?
Too much	Uncountable	Affirmative / Negative	I feel sick. I ate **too much** chocolate! You spend **too much** time watching TV.

Too many	Countable (Plural)	Affirmative / Negative	There are **too many** people in this supermarket. I made **too many** mistakes on the exam.
enough	Countable (Plural) & Uncountable	Affirmative, Negative, Questions	We don't have **enough** food for the party. Did you study **enough** for the science test?
every	Countable (Singular)	Affirmative, Negative, Questions	I study my English vocabulary **every** day. The teacher checked **every** notebook.
more	Countable (Plural) & Uncountable	Affirmative, Negative, Questions	I need **more** time to finish the test. We should buy **more** apples at the store.
less	Uncountable	Affirmative, Negative, Questions	Try to eat **less** junk food. I have **less** homework today than yesterday.

Exercise 13.1

Complete the following sentences using the correct **quantifier** from the list: **some**, **any**, **much**, **many**, **a lot of**, **a few**, **a little**, **how much**, **how many**, **too much**, **too many**, **enough**, or **every**

No.	Sentence

1 _____ money did you spend at the supermarket yesterday?

2 I am very thirsty. Can I have _____ water, please?

3 The teacher didn't give us _____ homework for the weekend. It will only take 10 minutes.

4 _____ notebooks will you buy for the new school year?

5 I only have two pens in my pencil case. I need to buy _____ pens.

6 The soup needs _____ salt. It doesn't taste very good yet.

7 I feel sick because I ate _____ cookies at the school party!

8 You need to study, so you should spend _____ time playing video games.

9 Did you buy _____ fresh fruit at the market yesterday?

10 We don't have _____ chairs in the classroom. Three students are standing.

11 _____ student in the school will get a new textbook tomorrow morning.

12 She has _____ friends at school because she is a very kind person.

13 I didn't read _____ books last year, only two or three.

14 He studied hard and answered _____ question on the exam correctly.

15 We have _____ time to finish the test. Don't worry, we won't be late.

16 Can you help me? I need _____ help with my math homework.

17 There are _____ beautiful dresses in that clothing store. I love them all!

18 I will invite _____ friends to my house to study for the exam.

19 Do you have _____ questions about the science lesson?

20 I am still hungry. I will buy _____ snacks for our study break later.

14. Participial Adjectives

Participial adjectives are adjectives that end in **-ed** or **-ing**. They are used to describe feelings and the things or situations that cause those feelings.

Form	Meaning	Example
-ed adjectives	Describe how someone **feels**.	I am bor**ed**. She is confus**ed**. They are interest**ed**.
-ing adjectives	Describe what **causes** the feeling.	The movie is bor**ing**. The plot in confusing. This book is interesting.

Exercise 14.1

Complete the following sentences using the correct **participial adjective** form of the words in parentheses.

No.	Sentence
1	She is _____ about this movie. (interest)
2	The book I read last night was very _____ (bore).
3	We were _____ (amaze) by the pop singer's beautiful voice.
4	I will not watch that film again; the story was very _____ (confuse).
5	My brother is always _____ (excite) to go to a rock music concert.
6	The three-hour classical music concert was very _____ (tire).
7	Were you _____ (surprise) by the sad ending of the book?
8	I think documentary movies about space are very _____ (interest).
9	The children will be _____ (bore) if the movie has no action.
10	That new action movie we saw yesterday was really _____ (excite)!

15. Relative Pronouns: who, which, that, where, and when

Relative pronouns are words we use to **add more information** about a person, thing, place, or time in a sentence.

Pronoun	Use	Example
who	people	Albert Einstein was the scientist **who** won the Nobel Prize.
which	things	The Titanic was a famous ship **which** sank in 1912.
that	people and things	Marie Curie is the woman **that** discovered radium. The telephone is an invention **that** changed the world.
where	places	Rome is the ancient city **where** you can see the Colosseum.
when	time	1969 was the year **when** humans walked on the moon.

Exercise 15.1

Complete the following sentences using the correct **relative pronouns**: **who**, **which**, **that**, **where**, or **when.**

No.	Sentence
1	Christopher Columbus was the explorer _____ arrived in America in 1492.
2	1776 is the year _____ the United States became an independent country.
3	The Mona Lisa is a very famous painting _____ Leonardo da Vinci painted.
4	Machu Picchu is a beautiful place _____ the Incas lived a long time ago.
5	William Shakespeare was a famous English writer _____ wrote *Romeo and*
6	The pyramid is a huge stone building _____ the ancient Egyptians built.
7	1914 was the year _____ the First World War started in Europe.
8	Paris is the city _____ they built the famous Eiffel Tower.

9 Abraham Lincoln was a great president _____ ended slavery in America.

10 The compass was a very important tool _____ helped sailors travel the oceans.

16. Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

Comparative Adjectives

We use comparative adjectives to **compare two people**, **animals**, **places**, or **things**. They show the difference between them.

Rule	Adjective	Comparative Form	Example
For most one-syllable adjectives, simply add **-er**.	fast	faster	A cheetah is **faster than** a dog.
If the adjective ends in a single vowel followed by a single consonant, double the consonant and add **-er**.	big	bigger	A bear is **bigger than** a cat.
If the adjective ends in **-e**, just add **-r**.	cute	cuter	A cat is **cuter than** a hamster.
For adjectives with **two or more syllables**, form the comparative by placing **more** before the adjective.	delicious	More delicious	Yogurt is **more delicious** than a soda.
For **two-syllable adjectives** that end in **-y**, change the **-y** to **-i** and add **-er**.	tasty	tastier	A chicken stew is **tastier than** a hot dog.
Some adjectives have irregular comparative forms.	Good	Better	A dog is **better than** a cat.

	bad	worse	A rat is **worse than** an insect.
	far	farther/further	Wolves **travel farther** than dogs.

Superlative Adjectives

We use superlative adjectives to **compare three or more people**, **animals**, **places**, or **things**. They show which one is the #1 or at the highest degree.

Rule	Adjective	Superlative Form	Example
For most one-syllable adjectives, add **-est** to the adjective.	great	the greatest	Ecuador is **the greatest** travel destination.
For adjectives that have one syllable and end in a single vowel + single consonant, double the final consonant before adding **-est**.	hot	the hottest	The Sahara desert is one of **the hottest** places in the world.
If the adjective ends in **-e**, just add **-st**.	large	the largest	Russia is **the largest** country.
For adjectives with two or more syllables, place **the most** before the adjective.	athletic	the most athletic	She is **the most athletic** person I know.
For two-syllable adjectives that end in **-y**, change the **-y** to **-i** and add **-est**.	speedy	the speediest	Usain Bolt is **the speediest** sprinter in the world.

Some adjectives have irregular superlative forms.	good	the best	Small towns are **the best** places to visit.
	bad	the worst	Crowded places are **the worst**.
	far	the farthest / furthest	That is **the farthest** place I've visited.

Exercise 16.1

Complete the following sentences with the correct comparative or superlative form of the adjective in parentheses.

No.	Sentence
1	A cheetah is _____ (fast) than a lion.
2	My grandfather was _____ (funny) person at the family party yesterday.
3	The trip to the beach will be _____ (relaxing) than the trip to the busy city.
4	Christmas is _____ (wonderful) time of the year!
5	The elephant we saw at the zoo was _____ (big) than the hippo.
6	My older brother is _____ (bad) at cooking than my mother.
7	That famous hotel will be _____ (expensive) place to stay in London.

8 Our last holiday was _____ (good) than the holiday we took two years ago.

9 The blue whale is _____ (heavy) animal in the entire ocean.

10 I am growing fast! I will be _____ (tall) than my father next year.

11 The tortoise is _____ (slow) than the rabbit.

12 My little sister is _____ (young) person in our family.

13 Traveling by airplane is _____ (fast) than traveling by car.

14 Summer vacation is _____ (long) holiday we have for the whole year.

15 A dolphin is _____ (intelligent) than a shark.

16 My grandmother makes _____ (delicious) cakes in the world.

17 I think Paris is _____ (beautiful) than many other cities in Europe.

18 New Year's Eve is _____ (noisy) night of the year because of the fireworks!

19 The giraffe has _____ (long) neck of all land animals.

20 A wild tiger is _____ (dangerous) than a domestic cat.

GRAMMAR REFERENCE ANSWER KEY

Section 1: Verbs and Tenses

Exercise 1.1

1	want	**wants**	**11**	clean	**cleans**
2	walk	**walks**	**12**	ask	**asks**
3	meet	**meets**	**13**	hit	**hits**
4	think	**thinks**	**14**	shout	**shouts**
5	go	**goes**	**15**	throw	**throws**
6	find	**finds**	**16**	dive	**dives**
7	speak	**speaks**	**17**	swim	**swims**
8	catch	**catches**	**18**	try	**tries**
9	sail	**sails**	**19**	die	**dies**
10	work	**works**	**20**	destroy	**destroys**

Exercise 1.2

No.	Sentence
1	Ishmael **wants** to see the world.
2	Queequeg **has** lots of tattoos on his skin.
3	Captain Ahab and the sailors **hunt** whales in the ocean.
4	The big white whale **hits** the small boats with his tail.

5	The Pequod **sails** for many weeks.
6	Ishmael and Queequeg **help** each other on the ship.
7	Captain Ahab **shouts** at the men during the storm.
8	The men **throw** their harpoons at the whales.
9	Moby-Dick **dives** deep into the sea.
10	I **work** hard as a sailor.

Exercise 1.3

No.	Sentence
1	Ishmael **doesn't want** to see the world.
2	Queequeg **doesn't have** lots of tattoos on his skin.
3	Captain Ahab and the sailors **don't hunt** whales in the ocean.
4	The big white whale **doesn't hit** the small boats with his tail.
5	The Pequod **doesn't sail** for many weeks.
6	Ishmael and Queequeg **don't help** each other on the ship.
7	Captain Ahab **doesn't shout** at the men during the storm.

8	The men **don't throw** their harpoons at the whales.
9	Moby-Dick **doesn't dive** deep into the sea.
10	I **don't work** hard as a sailor.

Exercise 1.4

No.	Interrogative Sentence
1	**Does** Ishmael **want** to see the world?
2	**Does** Queequeg **have** lots of tattoos on his skin?
3	**Do** Captain Ahab and the sailors **hunt** whales in the ocean?
4	**Does** the big white whale **hit** the small boats with his tail?
5	**Does** the Pequod **sail** for many weeks?
6	**Do** Ishmael and Queequeg **help** each other on the ship?
7	**Does** Captain Ahab **shout** at the men during the storm?
8	**Do** the men **throw** their harpoons at the whales?
9	**Does** Moby-Dick **dive** deep into the sea?
10	**Do** I **work** hard as a sailor?

Exercise 1.5

Question No.	Correct Option
1	a
2	b
3	a
4	b
5	b
6	a
7	b
8	b
9	a
10	c

Exercise 2.1

1	live	**living**	**11**	say	**saying**
2	marry	**marrying**	**12**	watch	**watching**
3	read	**reading**	**13**	leave	**leaving**

4	wait	**waiting**	**14**	move	**moving**
5	stay	**staying**	**15**	dance	**dancing**
6	run	**running**	**16**	smile	**smiling**
7	write	**writing**	**17**	sit	**sitting**
8	look	**looking**	**18**	think	**thinking**
9	talk	**talking**	**19**	get	**getting**
10	visit	**visiting**	**20**	treat	**treating**

Exercise 2.2

No.	Sentence
1	Elizabeth **is reading** a letter from Mr. Darcy.
2	Mr. Bingley and Jane **are talking** at the party.
3	Mrs. Bennet **is looking** for rich husbands for her daughters.
4	Mr. Darcy **is watching** Elizabeth from a distance.
5	Lydia **is staying** in another town.
6	Mr. Collins **is visiting** the Bennet family.
7	The workers **are saying** good things about Mr. Darcy.
8	Elizabeth and Charlotte **are thinking** about life and marriage.

9	I **am waiting** for Mr. Bingley to propose.
10	Jane and Mr. Bingley **are moving** to a house nearby.

Exercise 2.3

No.	Negative Sentence
1	Elizabeth **isn't reading** a letter from Mr. Darcy.
2	Mr. Bingley and Jane **aren't talking** at the party.
3	Mrs. Bennet **isn't looking** for rich husbands for her daughters.
4	Mr. Darcy **isn't watching** Elizabeth from a distance.
5	Lydia **isn't staying** in another town.
6	Mr. Collins **isn't visiting** the Bennet family.
7	The workers **aren't saying** good things about Mr. Darcy.
8	Elizabeth and Charlotte **aren't thinking** about life and marriage.
9	I **am not waiting** for Mr. Bingley to propose.
10	Jane and Mr. Bingley **aren't moving** to a house nearby.

Exercise 2.4

No.	Interrogative Sentence
1	**Is** Elizabeth **reading** a letter from Mr. Darcy?
2	**Are** Mr. Bingley and Jane **talking** at the party?
3	**Is** Mrs. Bennet **looking** for rich husbands for her daughters?
4	**Is** Mr. Darcy **watching** Elizabeth from a distance?
5	**Is** Lydia **staying** in another town?
6	**Is** Mr. Collins **visiting** the Bennet family?
7	**Are** the workers **saying** good things about Mr. Darcy?
8	**Are** Elizabeth and Charlotte **thinking** about life and marriage?
9	**Am** I **waiting** for Mr. Bingley to propose?
10	**Are** Jane and Mr. Bingley **moving** to a house nearby?

Exercise 2.5

Question No.	Correct Option
1	a
2	b

3	a
4	c
5	a
6	a
7	b
8	c
9	a
10	b

Exercise 3.1

No.	Sentence
1	Jane Eyre **was** a young girl.
2	Mrs. Reed and her children **were** unkind to Jane.
3	The Red Room **was** dark and scary.
4	Mr. Brocklehurst **was** a very strict man.

5	Helen **was** kind and patient.
6	You **were** a student at Lowood School.
7	The Rivers family **were** very kind to Jane.
8	St. John **was** a priest.
9	I **was** heartbroken when I left Thornfield Hall.
10	Bertha and Mr. Rochester **were** married.

Exercise 3.2

No.	Negative Sentence
1	Jane Eyre **wasn't** a young girl.
2	Mrs. Reed and her children **weren't** unkind to Jane.
3	The Red Room **wasn't** dark and scary.
4	Mr. Brocklehurst **wasn't** a very strict man.
5	Helen **wasn't** kind and patient.
6	You **weren't** a student at Lowood School.

7	The Rivers family **weren't** very kind to Jane.
8	St. John **wasn't** a priest.
9	I **wasn't** heartbroken when I left Thornfield Hall.
10	Bertha and Mr. Rochester **weren't** married.

Exercise 3.3

No.	Interrogative Sentence
1	**Was** Jane Eyre a young girl?
2	**Were** Mrs. Reed and her children unkind to Jane?
3	**Was** the Red Room dark and scary?
4	**Was** Mr. Brocklehurst a very strict man?
5	**Was** Helen kind and patient?
6	**Were** you a student at Lowood School?
7	**Were** the Rivers family very kind to Jane?
8	**Was** St. John a priest?
9	**Was** I heartbroken when I left Thornfield Hall?

10 **Were** Bertha and Mr. Rochester married?

Exercise 3.4

Question No.	Correct Option
1	a
2	b
3	a
4	c
5	a
6	a
7	b
8	a
9	a
10	b

Exercise 4.1

1	look	**looked**	**11**	decide	**decided**
2	walk	**walked**	**12**	land	**landed**

3	call	**called**	**13**	want	**wanted**
4	talk	**talked**	**14**	wait	**waited**
5	turn	**turned**	**15**	scare	**scared**
6	continue	**continued**	**16**	ask	**asked**
7	visit	**visited**	**17**	pick	**picked**
8	smile	**smiled**	**18**	shout	**shouted**
9	play	**played**	**19**	stay	**stayed**
10	watch	**watched**	**20**	follow	**followed**

Exercise 4.2

1	begin	**began**	**11**	feel	**felt**
2	break	**broke**	**12**	find	**found**
3	catch	**caught**	**13**	fly	**flew**
4	choose	**chose**	**14**	forget	**forgot**
5	come	**came**	**15**	get	**got**
6	do	**did**	**16**	give	**gave**
7	draw	**drew**	**17**	go	**went**
8	drink	**drank**	**18**	keep	**kept**
9	eat	**ate**	**19**	read	**read**
10	fall	**fell**	**20**	write	**wrote**

Exercise 4.3

No.	**Sentence**

1	Alice **saw** a white rabbit with a watch.
2	The rabbit **ran** into a dark hole.
3	Alice **drank** the liquid from the small bottle.
4	The animals **had** a race to dry off.
5	Alice **went** to the White Rabbit's house.
6	The caterpillar **sat** on a big mushroom.
7	The Duchess's baby **turned** into a pig.
8	The Cheshire Cat **smiled** at Alice.
9	The Queen of Hearts **shouted** at the soldiers.
10	Alice **woke** up by the river.

Exercise 4.4

No.	Negative Sentence
1	Alice **didn't see** a white rabbit with a watch.
2	The rabbit **didn't run** into a dark hole.
3	Alice **didn't drink** the liquid from the small bottle.

4	The animals **didn't have** a race to dry off.
5	Alice **didn't go** to the White Rabbit's house.
6	The caterpillar **didn't sit** on a big mushroom.
7	The Duchess's baby **didn't turn** into a pig.
8	The Cheshire Cat **didn't smile** at Alice.
9	The Queen of Hearts **didn't shout** at the soldiers.
10	Alice **didn't wake** up by the river.

Exercise 4.5

No.	Interrogative Sentence
1	**Did** Alice **see** a white rabbit with a watch?
2	**Did** the rabbit **run** into a dark hole?
3	**Did** Alice **drink** the liquid from the small bottle?
4	**Did** the animals **have** a race to dry off?
5	**Did** Alice **go** to the White Rabbit's house?
6	**Did** the caterpillar **sit** on a big mushroom?

7 **Did** the Duchess's baby **turn** into a pig?

8 **Did** the Cheshire Cat **smile** at Alice?

9 **Did** the Queen of Hearts **shout** at the soldiers?

10 **Did** Alice **wake** up by the river?

Exercise 4.6

Question No.	Correct Option
1	b
2	a
3	a
4	c
5	a
6	a
7	b
8	c
9	c

10	b

Exercise 5.1

1	work	**working**	**11**	talk	**talking**
2	study	**studying**	**12**	scream	**screaming**
3	blow	**blowing**	**13**	run	**running**
4	move	**moving**	**14**	find	**finding**
5	sleep	**sleeping**	**15**	make	**making**
6	hide	**hiding**	**16**	follow	**following**
7	walk	**walking**	**17**	travel	**traveling**
8	watch	**watching**	**18**	take	**taking**
9	listen	**listening**	**19**	die	**dying**
10	learn	**learning**	**20**	wait	**waiting**

Exercise 5.2

No.	Sentence
1	Victor **was studying** science at the university in Germany.
2	A strong storm **was blowing** outside that night.
3	The ugly man **was hiding** in the dark forest.
4	The man **was walking** alone in the woods.

5 The lonely man **was watching** the kind family.

6 The people **were screaming** in terror when they saw his face.

7 Victor **was working** hard to make a wife for him.

8 The man **was following** Victor across the mountains.

9 The sailors **were taking** Victor on their ship.

10 I **was listening** to your sad story.

Exercise 5.3

No.	Negative Sentence
1	Victor **wasn't studying** science at the university in Germany.
2	A strong storm **wasn't blowing** outside that night.
3	The ugly man **wasn't hiding** in the dark forest.
4	The man **wasn't walking** alone in the woods.
5	The lonely man **wasn't watching** the kind family.
6	The people **weren't screaming** in terror when they saw his face.
7	Victor **wasn't working** hard to make a wife for him.

8	The man **wasn't following** Victor across the mountains.
9	The sailors **weren't taking** Victor on their ship.
10	I **wasn't listening** to your sad story.

Exercise 5.4

No.	Interrogative Sentence
1	**Was** Victor **studying** science at the university in Germany?
2	**Was** a strong storm **blowing** outside that night?
3	**Was** the ugly man **hiding** in the dark forest?
4	**Was** the man **walking** alone in the woods?
5	**Was** the lonely man **watching** the kind family?
6	**Were** the people **screaming** in terror when they saw his face?
7	**Was** Victor **working** hard to make a wife for him?
8	**Was** the man **following** Victor across the mountains?
9	**Were** the sailors **taking** Victor on their ship?
10	**Was** I **listening** to your sad story?

Exercise 5.5

Question No.	Correct Option
1	a
2	b
3	a
4	c
5	b
6	c
7	c
8	a
9	b
10	a

Exercise 6.1

Question No.	Correct Option
1	a

2	b
3	c
4	a
5	b
6	a
7	b
8	a
9	c
10	b

Exercise 6.2

One day, while Edmond **1 was planning** his wedding with Mercédès, some bad men **2 decided** to hurt him. When the soldiers **3 arrived** at the party, Edmond **4 was celebrating** with his friends. They sent him to the terrible Château d'If. While Edmond **5 was living** in the dark room, he **6 met** an old, smart man named Abbé Faria. One night, while they **7 were talking** about the hidden treasure, Abbé Faria **8 became** very sick and died. Later, while Edmond **9 was swimming** in the cold sea to escape, he **10 found** his freedom at last.

Exercise 7.1

1	work	**worked**	**11**	know	**known**
2	travel	**traveled**	**12**	put	**put**
3	see	**seen**	**13**	open	**opened**
4	think	**thought**	**14**	find	**found**
5	say	**said**	**15**	hide	**hidden**
6	start	**started**	**16**	attack	**attacked**
7	look	**looked**	**17**	learn	**learned**
8	drink	**drunk**	**18**	destroy	**destroyed**
9	try	**tried**	**19**	fight	**fought**
10	become	**become**	**20**	cut	**cut**

Exercise 7.2

No.	Sentence
1	Jonathan **has traveled** to Transylvania.
2	Dracula **has bought** a house in England.
3	I **have seen** scared people in the town.
4	Dracula **has drunk** blood to stay alive.
5	Lucy **has become** a vampire.
6	Van Helsing **has put** garlic around her room.

7 The brave friends **have formed** a group to hunt Dracula.

8 The group **has (or have) destroyed** the boxes of dirt.

9 Jonathan and Quincy **have opened** Dracula's box.

10 Mina and Jonathan **have started** a family.

Exercise 7.3

No.	Negative Sentence
1	Jonathan **hasn't traveled** to Transylvania.
2	Dracula **hasn't bought** a house in England.
3	I **haven't seen** scared people in the town.
4	Dracula **hasn't drunk** blood to stay alive.
5	Lucy **hasn't become** a vampire.
6	Van Helsing **hasn't put** garlic around her room.
7	The brave friends **haven't formed** a group to hunt Dracula.
8	The group **hasn't (or haven’t) destroyed** the boxes of dirt.
9	Jonathan and Quincy **haven't opened** Dracula's box.

10	Mina and Jonathan **haven't started** a family.

Exercise 7.4

No.	Interrogative Sentence
1	**Has** Jonathan **traveled** to Transylvania?
2	**Has** Dracula **bought** a house in England?
3	**Have** I **seen** scared people in the town?
4	**Has** Dracula **drunk** blood to stay alive?
5	**Has** Lucy **become** a vampire?
6	**Has** Van Helsing **put** garlic around her room?
7	**Have** the brave friends **formed** a group to hunt Dracula?
8	**Has (or Have)** the group **destroyed** the boxes of dirt?
9	**Have** Jonathan and Quincy **opened** Dracula's box?
10	**Have** Mina and Jonathan **started** a family?

Exercise 7.5

Question No.	Correct Option

1	a
2	b
3	a
4	a
5	a
6	a
7	a
8	a
9	c
10	a

Exercise 7.6

No.	Sentence
1	Jonathan thought, "I have **never** seen people so afraid."
2	Have you **ever** met an important man from Transylvania?
3	We must act quickly! He has **already** started to attack Mina.

4	Dracula has lived in that dark castle **for** many centuries.
5	She is very sick, but she hasn't died **yet**.
6	Look! They have **just** cut off Dracula's head! The fight ended a second ago.
7	The count has known about his plan **since** he bought the house in England.
8	It has **never** drank water; it only drinks blood to stay alive.
9	The sun is going down, but we haven't reached the castle **yet**.
10	The group has **already** destroyed the boxes. They're broken now.

Exercise 8.1

No.	Sentence
1	Dorian Gray **arrived** in London many years ago, but people **haven't forgotten** his beautiful face yet.
2	Basil **painted** the magic picture a long time ago, but its magic **has lasted** until today.
3	Lord Henry **saw** the painting yesterday, but he **has known** Basil for many years.
4	"I **have never seen** such a beautiful painting since I **became** an artist," said Basil.
5	Ever since Dorian **made** that terrible wish, his life **has been** full of dark

secrets.

6 Last night, Dorian **put** the picture in a secret room because it **has grown** uglier recently.

7 Dorian **met** Sibyl at a theatre, but he **hasn't thought** about her for years.

8 Dorian **has stayed** young and handsome since he **made** the wish.

9 Lord Henry and Dorian **met** when Dorian was young, and they **have been** friends for a long time.

10 People whisper because Dorian **has done** many bad things since he **moved** to the city.

11 Yesterday, Basil **came** to visit Dorian because he **has heard** terrible rumors recently.

12 Dorian **killed** Basil in anger, and he **has felt** afraid ever since.

13 Alan **helped** Dorian destroy the body last week, but he **hasn't slept** well since then.

14 James is Sibyl's brother. He **has hated** Dorian since his sister **died**.

15 "Look at my face! I **have stayed** young since the day I **was** born," Dorian told James.

16 The picture **has become** much uglier since Dorian **committed** his first crime.

17 Dorian **took** a long knife to cut the painting because he **has decided** to change his life today.

18 The servants **have just heard** a loud noise, so they **ran** into the room a minute

ago.

19 The police **have already arrived**, but the servants **found** Dorian dead on the floor an hour ago.

20 "I **have worked** in this house for many years, but I **didn't hear** the terrible noise last night!" a servant said.

Exercise 9.1

No. **Question and Answer**

---

1 **Q:** What **was** Frederick **like** eight years ago?

A: He **was** a poor young man.

2 **Q:** What **is** Sir Walter **like**?

A: He **is** a very proud man who loves money.

3 **Q:** What **are** Louisa and Henrietta **like**?

A: They **are** young, happy, and friendly.

4 **Q:** What **were** Anne's sisters **like** when they lived at Kellynch Hall?

A: They **were** selfish and loud; they only cared about themselves.

5 **Q:** What **was** Louisa's fall in Lyme **like**?

A: It **was** shocking and very scary for everyone.

6 **Q:** What **is** Mr. Elliot **like**?

A: He **is** a bad man who only cares about money.

7 **Q:** What **is** Mary **like** when she doesn't get what she wants?

A: She **is like** a crying baby!

8 **Q:** What **was** the beautiful letter from Captain Wentworth **like** for Anne?

A: It **was like** a wonderful dream come true.

9 **Q:** What **is** Mrs. Smith **like**?

A: She **is** poor and sick, but very smart.

10 **Q:** What **was** Captain Wentworth **like** when he came back to visit?

A: He **was** rich, confident, and handsome.

Exercise 10.1

No.	Sentence
1	The Greeks built a big wooden horse **to** hide inside the city of Troy.
2	After the escape, the angry giant cried **for** help.
3	Did Odysseus travel to the land of the dead **to** find a way home?
4	Penelope didn't choose a new husband **for** her kingdom.
5	Telemachus and his father make a clever plan **to** defeat the bad men.
6	Did Odysseus ask the kind people on the new island **for** a ship?
7	The men didn't open the bag of wind **to** destroy their own boat.
8	Odysseus put wax in his men's ears **to** protect them from the Sirens.
9	Did the bad men stay in Penelope's house **for** money?
10	Penelope didn’t want **to** finish the cloth.

Exercise 11.1

No.	Scrambled Words	Correct Sentence
1	going / a / have / baby / Andrei's / wife / is / to	Andrei's wife **is going to have** a baby.
2	to / Pierre / help / is / poor / going / people	Pierre **is going to help** poor people.
3	getting / Pierre / married / Natasha / and / are	Pierre and Natasha **are getting** married.
4	is / true / find / Natasha / going / love / to	Natasha **is going to find** true love.
5	Napoleon / army / bringing / is / his / to / Russia	Napoleon **is bringing** his army to Russia.
6	the / are / burn / Russians / going / to / Moscow	The Russians **are going to burn** Moscow.
7	Anatole / escaping / Natasha / are / and / tonight	Anatole and Natasha **are escaping** tonight.
8	are / to / start / they / a / family / going	They **are going to start** a family.
9	leaving / French / army / the / Russia / is	The French army **is leaving** Russia.
10	to / is / a / life / build / Pierre / going / happy	Pierre **is going to build** a happy life.

Exercise 11.2

No.	Interrogative Sentence
1	Andrei’s wife **isn't going to have** a baby.
2	Pierre **isn't going to help** poor people.
3	Pierre and Natasha **aren't getting** married.
4	Natasha **isn't going to find** true love.
5	Napoleon **isn't bringing** his army to Russia.
6	The Russians **aren't going to burn** Moscow.
7	Anatole and Natasha **aren't escaping** tonight.
8	They **aren't going to start** a family.
9	The French army **isn't leaving** Russia.
10	Pierre **isn't going to build** a happy life.

Exercise 11.3

No.	Interrogative Sentence
1	**Is** Andrei’s wife **going to have** a baby?

2	**Is** Pierre **going to help** poor people?
3	**Are** Pierre and Natasha **getting** married?
4	**Is** Natasha **going to find** true love?
5	**Is** Napoleon **bringing** his army to Russia?
6	**Are** the Russians **going to burn** Moscow?
7	**Are** Anatole and Natasha **escaping** tonight?
8	**Are** they **going to start** a family?
9	**Is** the French army **leaving** Russia?
10	**Is** Pierre **going to build** a happy life?

Exercise 11.4

Question No.	Correct Option
1	a
2	b
3	b
4	a

5	c
6	a
7	b
8	c
9	b
10	a

Exercise 12.1

No.	Sentence	Type of sentence
1	You look tired. I will carry your bags.	**O**
2	I think the winter will be extremely cold this year.	**PR**
3	I will always love you.	**PO**
4	We don't have food. I will buy some right now.	**SD**
5	They have no food or weapons. They will leave Russia soon.	**PR**
6	You are sick. I will take care of you.	**O**
7	He is a bad person. I will never speak to him again.	**PO**

8	It is too dangerous to go out. I will stay home.	**SD**
9	They are very happy. They will build a beautiful family.	**PR**
10	You need to eat. I will give you my money to buy food.	**O**

Exercise 12.2

No.	Affirmative sentence	Negative sentence
1	I **will carry** your bags.	I **won't carry** your bags.
2	This winter will **be** different.	This winter **won't be** different.
3	She will **forget** you.	She **won't forget** you.
4	He **will burn** the city.	He **won't burn** the city.
5	His army **will leave** Russia soon.	His army **won't leave** Russia soon.
6	I **will take** care of you.	I **won't take** care of you.
7	I **will talk** to him tomorrow.	I **won’t talk** to him tomorrow.
8	I **will fight** for my country.	I **won’t fight** for my country.
9	They **will build** a beautiful family.	They **won’t build** a beautiful family.
10	I **will give** you money to buy food.	I **won't give** you money to buy food.

Exercise 12.3

No.	Sentence
1	**Will** you **carry** my bags?
2	**Will** this **winter** be different?
3	**Will** she **forget** you?
4	**Will** he **burn** the city?

5	**Will** his army **leave** Russia soon?
6	**Will** you **take** care of me?
7	**Will** you **talk** to him tomorrow?
8	**Will** you **fight** for your country?
9	**Will** they **build** a beautiful family?
10	**Will** you **give** me money to buy food?

Exercise 12.4

Question No.	Correct Option
1	a
2	c
3	a
4	b
5	c
6	a
7	b
8	c
9	a

10	b

Exercise 13.1

No.	Sentence	Type of conditional
1	If you don't water plants, they die.	**0**
2	If it rains tomorrow, we won't go to the park.	**1**
3	When people do not sleep enough, they get tired.	**0**
4	If you don't study hard, you won't pass the final exam.	**1**
5	If you mix red and blue, you don't get green.	**0**
6	When the sun goes down, it gets dark.	**0**
7	If she doesn't accept the job offer, she won't move to LA.	**1**
8	If you eat too much candy, you get a stomachache.	**0**
9	When I finish my work early, I will call you.	**1**
10	If we don't leave right now, we will miss the train.	**1**

Exercise 13.2

No.	Zero conditional

1	**If/When** people do not eat healthy food, they **don't feel** well.
2	**If/When** a houseplant doesn't get water, it **dies**.
3	**If/When** you press this button, the machine **turns** on.
4	**If/When** it doesn't snow, the roads **are not** (or **aren't**) slippery.
5	**If/When** you mix yellow and blue, you **get** green.
6	**If/When** children don't play outside, they **don't get** dirty.
7	**If/When** the sun rises, a new day **begins**.
8	**If/When** you don't put milk in the fridge, it **goes** sour.
9	**If/When** you exercise regularly, you **stay** healthy.
10	**If/When** you touch a hot stove, you **burn** your hand.

Exercise 13.3

No.	First conditional
1	**If** you don't hurry, you **will miss** the bus.
2	**If** I don't have enough money, I **won't buy** a new phone.
3	**If** she works hard, she **will get** a promotion.

4 **If** you don't call him tonight, he **won't be** happy.

5 **If** we leave early, we **will avoid** the traffic.

6 **If** you forget your umbrella, you **will get** wet.

7 **If** the weather is not nice tomorrow, we **won't go** to the beach.

8 **If** he studies tonight, he **will do** well on the test.

9 **If** you don't tell the truth, people **won't trust** you.

10 **If** I see her at the meeting, I **will give** her your message.

Exercise 13.4

No.	Completed Sentence
1	If the alarm **doesn't ring** (or **does not ring**), I **don't wake** up on time.
2	If you **drop** a glass on the floor, it **breaks**.
3	If she **doesn't invite** me to the party, I **won't go** (or **will not go**).
4	When the temperature **drops** below zero, water **freezes**.
5	If we **don't save** enough money, we **won't travel** to Japan next year.
6	When you **smile**, people usually **smile** back at you.

7	If it **doesn't rain** tomorrow, we **will have** a barbecue.
8	When babies **aren't** (or **are not**) hungry, they **don't cry**.
9	If you **don't wear** a jacket, you **will catch** a cold tonight.
10	If they **win** the next game, they **will be** the champions.

Exercise 14.1

No.	Sentence
1	She **may** not understand French. She is new in the country.
2	He **might** be at home, but I'm not sure.
3	This road **can** be dangerous at night.
4	They **may** visit us later. They have time today.
5	I **might** be wrong, but I think Gatsby loves Daisy.
6	Life **can** be unfair sometimes.
7	We **could** go to the party tonight. It is a good idea.
8	She **may** not come to the meeting. She is very busy.
9	People **could** change over time.

10 He **might** be tired after the long trip.

11 This story **could** teach us an important lesson.

12 They **might** not understand the situation.

13 Money **can** not bring happiness.

14 She **may** still love him. It is possible.

15 Accidents **can** happen when people drive fast.

16 He **could** find a better job in the future.

17 She **might** be at the party, but I don’t see her.

18 People **can** make mistakes in life.

19 They **may** move to another city next year.

20 This plan **could** work if we try.

Exercise 15.1

No.	Sentence
1	She **can** swim very well.
2	He **could / was able to** read when he was four years old.

3 They **will be able to** finish the project tomorrow.

4 I **could not / was not able to** understand the teacher yesterday.

5 We **can** speak English in class.

6 She **will not be able to** come to the party next week.

7 He **could / was able to** play the piano when he was a child.

8 I **can** help you right now.

9 They **will be able to** solve the problem after some time.

10 She **could not / was not able to** ride a bike when she was younger.

11 We **can** see the mountains from here.

12 He **was not able to** finish the test on time yesterday.

13 I **will be able to** travel alone next year.

14 She **can** cook very well.

15 They **could not / were not able to** understand the lesson last week.

16 We **will be able to** find a solution soon.

17 He **could / was able to** run very fast when he was young.

18	I **can** use this computer easily.
19	She **will be able to** attend the meeting tomorrow.
20	They **will be able to** fix the car after some practice.

Exercise 16.1

No.	Sentence
1	People **must** treat others with respect.
2	You **must not** lie in court.
3	We **have to** follow the law in our community.
4	A good person **must** help others in need.
5	You **must not** hurt someone because you are angry.
6	Students **have to** listen carefully in class.
7	You **don’t have to** agree with everyone.
8	People **must** show empathy to understand others.
9	We **must not** judge people too quickly.
10	Citizens **have to** respect the law.

11	A lawyer **must** defend their client fairly.
12	You **must not** say bad things about others.
13	We **must** help people if they ask for support.
14	Students **have to** wear a uniform at school.
15	You **don’t have to** come if you don’t want to.
16	People **must** be honest in difficult situations.
17	We **must not** ignore injustice.
18	Children **have to** follow their parents’ rules.
19	You **must not** stay silent if something is wrong.
20	People **must** forgive others to live in peace.

Exercise 17.1

No.	Sentence
1	You **should** be yourself, even if others don’t understand you.
2	People **shouldn’t** pretend to be someone they are not.
3	We **ought to** show kindness to people who feel alone.

4 You **shouldn’t** follow others just to be accepted.

5 **Should** I tell the truth, even if it is difficult?

6 We **ought not to** ignore people who need help.

7 You **should** speak honestly about your emotions.

8 People **shouldn’t** judge others by appearances.

9 **Should** we try to understand others before judging them?

10 You **shouldn’t** hide your true personality.

11 A good friend **ought to** support others in difficult times.

12 People **shouldn’t** care too much about what others think.

13 **Should** I trust my feelings in this situation?

14 We **ought not to** forget to be kind in a difficult world.

15 A person **ought to** stay true to their values.

16 You **shouldn’t** lie to make people like you.

17 We **should** help others feel accepted.

18 People **ought not to** lose their identity to fit in.

19	**Should** I be more honest with myself?
20	We **ought to** show compassion in a superficial world.

Exercise 18.1

No.	Sentence
1	I like **reading** books at night.
2	She enjoys **dancing** with her friends.
3	They love **watching** movies on weekends.
4	He hates **waiting** for the bus.
5	We enjoy **playing** soccer after school.
6	I don’t like **waking** up early.
7	She loves **cooking** for her family.
8	He doesn’t enjoy **studying** math.
9	Do you like **listening** to music?
10	They hate **cleaning** the house.
11	I enjoy **traveling** to new places.

12 She doesn't like **running** in the morning.

13 We love **eating** pizza.

14 Do you enjoy **learning** English?

15 He hates **doing** homework.

16 I like **drawing** pictures.

17 She enjoys **reading** stories.

18 They don't like **working** late.

19 Do you love **playing** video games?

20 We hate **getting** up early on Sundays.

Exercise 19.1

No.	Question
1	**Would** you like some water after your presentation?
2	I **would** like to order a sandwich from the campus cafeteria, please.
3	Would you **mind** helping me with this English assignment?
4	Would you like **to** join our study group at the library?

5 A: Would you like to come to my party on Saturday?

B: I'd **love** to!

6 **A: Would** you lend me your dictionary for a minute?

B: Yes, of course.

7 I would **be** happy to show you around the campus.

8 Would you like me **to** check your spelling?

9 **A:** Would you mind passing me that notebook?

B: Not **at** all. Here it is.

10 **A:** Would you like some more tea?

B: No, thank **you**. I have enough.

11 **A:** Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?

B: I'm sorry, I **can't**. I have an exam tomorrow.

12 We **would** like to invite you to the university graduation dinner.

13 Would you mind not **playing** your music so loudly in the computer lab?

14 **A:** Would you help me carry these heavy books?

B: Yes, of **course**.

15 **Would** you like me to open the window?

16 **A:** Would you mind **helping** me practice my pronunciation?

B: No problem.

17 Would you **like** to have lunch together after class?

18 **A:** Would you like to study together?

B: Sorry, I **can't**. I have a meeting with my professor.

19 **Would** you like an apple or an orange with your snack?

20 I wouldn't **mind** staying a few minutes late to finish this exercise.

Section 2

Exercise 1.1

No.	Completed Sentence
1	I usually eat **NA** breakfast at 7:00 AM before my morning run.
2	We booked our cheap flight tickets on **the** internet.
3	He plays **NA** golf with his friends on Saturday mornings.
4	My sister will practice **the** drums in her room tonight.
5	The fast train to the city will arrive in exactly **an** hour.
6	After work, I usually go to **the** gym to do my exercise routine.
7	I packed **a** delicious sandwich for our picnic at the beach.

8 Next year, my family will travel to **NA** Greece for our vacation.

9 They visited **the** United Kingdom last winter and loved the museums.

10 I bought a new tennis racket yesterday. **The** racket is very light!

11 The flight attendant wears **a** clean uniform on every flight.

12 The large cruise ship sailed across **the** Atlantic Ocean.

13 **NA** vacations are very fun and relaxing for everyone.

14 They will study **NA** Spanish before their big trip to Madrid.

15 **NA** music always helps me relax on long international flights.

16 Please pass **the** pepper; this soup needs a little more flavor.

17 She ate **an** apple and drank some water after her swimming lesson.

18 **The** rich travel to expensive hotels around the world.

19 **The** sun was very hot on the volleyball court yesterday.

20 My brother is **an** honest player; he always follows the rules of the game.

Exercise 2.1

No.	Sentence

1 I am **always** excited to see my friends on campus. (100%)

2 She **usually** brushes her teeth right after breakfast. (90%)

3 We **often** feel tired after a long day of studying. (70%)

4 He is **sometimes** worried about his English exams. (50%)

5 They **rarely** go to sleep late during the week. (10%)

6 I am **hardly ever** sad on bright, sunny days. (5%)

7 My professor is **never** angry in the morning. (0%)

8 The students **always** smile when they get good grades. (100%)

9 I am **usually** hungry at 12:00 PM. (90%)

10 She **often** listens to music to relax her mind. (70%)

11 We **sometimes** take a walk in the evening to clear our heads. (50%)

12 He is **rarely** late for his favorite class. (10%)

13 I **hardly ever** watch TV late at night because I need to sleep. (5%)

14 They **never** eat a heavy breakfast before running. (0%)

15 You are **always** kind and helpful to everyone. (100%)

16	My classmates **usually** do their homework after school. (90%)
17	I am **often** sleepy during the afternoon lectures. (70%)
18	She **sometimes** feels nervous before a big presentation. (50%)
19	We are **rarely** stressed on the weekends. (10%)
20	He **never** forgets his keys at home. (0%)

Exercise 3.1

No.	Sentence
1	I love to walk in the forest **in** the morning to listen to the birds.
2	The curious boy found a strange new bug **on** Tuesday.
3	We looked at the sky **at** night and asked many questions about the stars.
4	Beautiful green leaves grow on the trees **in** spring.
5	She always paints her unique pictures **on** Sundays.
6	A little bird started to sing outside my window **at** 6:00 AM.
7	He traveled alone to the mountains **in** 2022 to learn about himself.
8	They planted a very special tree **on** April 22nd.

9	The leaves change to beautiful colors **in** October.
10	I often sit by the river and think about the world **at** noon.

Exercise 4.1

No.	Sentence
1	Look at **those** beautiful shoes in the store window across the street!
2	**This** phone in my hand is very fast.
3	Did you see **those** big houses far away near the mountains?
4	I do not like **these** old papers right here on my desk.
5	**This** list of life goals on my notebook is very important to me.
6	Look at **that** beautiful car driving over there.
7	**This** new jacket I am wearing right now keeps me very warm.
8	Who left **those** dirty cups on the table over there?
9	**That** person across the room is my new boss.
10	I can take great photos with **this** camera I am holding.

Exercise 5.1

No.	Sentence
1	I have a car. **My** car is black.
2	She wants to buy a house. **Her** dream is to have a big garden.
3	We live in a small town. **Our** town is very quiet.
4	The students passed all their exams. **Their** parents are very happy.
5	John loves his job. **His** office is in the city center.
6	The bird is in the tree. **Its** feathers are blue.
7	Do you like **my** new shoes? I just bought them!
8	Excuse me, is this **your** jacket? You left it on the chair.
9	My wife and I love **our** new television.
10	The company wants to improve **its** products this year.

Exercise 6.1

No.	Incorrect Phrase	Correct Phrase
1	the book of my brother	**My brother’s book**
2	the car of my parents	**My parents' car**

3	the goals of the students	**The students' goals**
4	the house of Sarah	**Sarah's house**
5	the toys of the children	**The children's toys**
6	the phone of my sister	**My sister's phone**
7	the dog of Chris	**Chris's dog**
8	the dream of my friend	**My friend's dream**
9	the apartment of Tom and Jane	**Tom and Jane's apartment**
10	the computer of the boss	**The boss's computer**

Exercise 7.1

No.	Sentence
1	I bought a new car yesterday. The car is **mine**.
2	These are not my keys. Are they **yours**?
3	My brother got a new phone. The phone is **his**.
4	She paid for the expensive watch. The watch is **hers**.
5	We worked hard for this business. The business is **ours**.

6 My parents bought a beautiful house. The house is **theirs**.

7 You forgot your umbrella, so you can take **mine** (or **ours** / **hers** / **his**).

8 Mary found a ring. I think it is **hers**.

9 John and I share a dream. The dream is **ours**.

10 The students left their backpacks here. Those bags are **theirs**.

Exercise 8.1

No.	Sentence
1	My sister has a new job. I am very proud of **her**.
2	This is a great book. Did you read **it**?
3	My friends and I are going to the cinema. Do you want to come with **us**?
4	John forgot his laptop. Please give this to **him**.
5	I cannot find my keys. Did you see **them**?
6	You are my best friend. I trust **you**.
7	Please help **me**. I don't understand this math problem.
8	The dog is hungry. Give **it** some food.

9 We saw Sarah and Tom at the mall, and we said hello to **them**.

10 My father works hard. I respect **him** a lot.

Exercise 9.1

No.	Sentence
1	I want to learn a new language by **myself**.
2	She looked at **herself** in the mirror before the job interview.
3	We cooked the dinner **ourselves**.
4	The cat cleans **itself** every morning.
5	They enjoyed **themselves** at the concert last night.
6	He cut **himself** while he was preparing lunch.
7	Make sure you ask **yourself** what your real goals are.
8	Kids, please behave **yourselves** at the museum!
9	I found **myself** a comfortable chair in the library.
10	My parents painted their new bedroom **themselves**.

Exercise 10.1

No.	Completed Question
1	**What** will you cook for dinner tonight?
2	**Who** is the best doctor in this hospital?
3	**Where** did you buy those delicious apples?
4	**When** do you usually wake up on weekends?
5	**Why** did you leave the restaurant early yesterday?
6	**Which** ice cream do you prefer, chocolate or vanilla?
7	**How** do you make your coffee in the morning?
8	**Whose** beautiful blue car is that?
9	**What** did you do at the park last Sunday?
10	**Where** will they build the new library?

Exercise 11.1

1	slow	**slowly**	**11**	confident	**confidently**
2	quick	**quickly**	**12**	perfect	**perfectly**
3	bad	**badly**	**13**	clear	**clearly**
4	careful	**carefully**	**14**	brave	**bravely**
5	quiet	**quietly**	**15**	creative	**creatively**

6	loud	**loudly**	**16**	good	**well**
7	happy	**happily**	**17**	fast	**fast**
8	easy	**easily**	**18**	hard	**hard**
9	fluent	**fluently**	**19**	successful	**successfully**
10	patient	**patiently**	**20**	simple	**simply**

Exercise 11.2

No.	Scrambled Words	Correct Sentence
1	learns / quickly / she / English	She learns English quickly.
2	piano / well / the / played / he	He played the piano well.
3	hard / will / for / my / study / exams / I	I will study hard for my exams.
4	read / the / carefully / students / book	The students read the book carefully.
5	fluently / spoke / teacher / Spanish / the	The teacher spoke Spanish fluently.
6	easily / math / solved / problem / the / she	She solved the math problem easily.
7	goals / confidently / will / achieve / you / your	You will achieve your goals confidently.
8	patiently / listened / to / the / they / instructions	They listened to the instructions patiently.

9	writes / creatively / stories / new / he	He writes new stories creatively.
10	fast / types / on / computer / the / Maria	Maria types fast on the computer.

Exercise 12.1

1	tomato	**CN**	**11**	notebook	**CN**
2	milk	**UN**	**12**	water	**UN**
3	dollar	**CN**	**13**	bag	**CN**
4	money	**UN**	**14**	cheese	**UN**
5	pencil	**CN**	**15**	dictionary	**CN**
6	homework	**UN**	**16**	rice	**UN**
7	banana	**CN**	**17**	exam	**CN**
8	bread	**UN**	**18**	time	**UN**
9	student	**CN**	**19**	customer	**CN**
10	information	**UN**	**20**	sugar	**UN**

Exercise 13.1

No.	Completed Sentence
1	**How much** money did you spend at the supermarket yesterday?
2	I am very thirsty. Can I have **some** (or *more*) water, please?
3	The teacher didn't give us **much** (or *a lot of*) homework for the weekend.

4 **How many** notebooks will you buy for the new school year?

5 I only have two pens in my pencil case. I need to buy **more** (or *some* / *a few*) pens.

6 The soup needs **a little** (or *more* / *some*) salt. It doesn't taste very good yet.

7 I feel sick because I ate **too many** cookies at the school party!

8 You need to study, so you should spend **less** time playing video games.

9 Did you buy **any** fresh fruit at the market yesterday?

10 We don't have **enough** chairs in the classroom. Three students are standing.

11 **Every** student in the school will get a new textbook tomorrow morning.

12 She has **a lot of** (or *many*) friends at school because she is a very kind person.

13 I didn't read **many** (or *a lot of*) books last year, only two or three.

14 He studied hard and answered **every** question on the exam correctly.

15 We have **enough** (or *a lot of* / *much*) time to finish the test. Don't worry, we won't be late.

16 Can you help me? I need **a little** (or *some* / *more*) help with my math homework.

17 There are **many** (or *a lot of*) beautiful dresses in that clothing store. I love them all!

18	I will invite **a few** (or *some* / *more*) friends to my house to study for the exam.
19	Do you have **any** (or *more*) questions about the science lesson?
20	I am still hungry. I will buy **more** (or *some* / *a few*) snacks for our study break later.

Exercise 14.1

No.	Completed Sentence
1	She is **interested** in this new science fiction movie.
2	The book I read last night was very **boring**.
3	We were **amazed** by the pop singer's beautiful voice.
4	I will not watch that film again; the story was very **confusing**.
5	My brother is always **excited** to go to a rock music concert.
6	The three-hour classical music concert was very **tiring**.
7	Were you **surprised** by the sad ending of the book?
8	I think documentary movies about space are very **interesting**.
9	The children will be **bored** if the movie has no action.
10	That new action movie we saw yesterday was really **exciting**!

Exercise 15.1

No.	Completed Sentence

1	Christopher Columbus was the explorer **who** (or that) arrived in America in 1492.
2	1776 is the year **when** the United States became an independent country.
3	The Mona Lisa is a very famous painting **which** (or that) Leonardo da Vinci painted.
4	Machu Picchu is a beautiful place **where** the Incas lived a long time ago.
5	William Shakespeare was a famous English writer **who** (or that) wrote Romeo and Juliet.
6	The pyramid is a huge stone building **which** (or that) the ancient Egyptians built.
7	1914 was the year **when** the First World War started in Europe.
8	Paris is the city **where** they built the famous Eiffel Tower.
9	Abraham Lincoln was a great president **who** (or that) ended slavery in America.
10	The compass was a very important tool **which** (or that) helped sailors travel the oceans.

Exercise 16.1

No.	Completed Sentence
1	A cheetah is **faster** than a lion.

2 My grandfather was **the funniest** person at the family party yesterday.

3 The trip to the beach will be **more relaxing** than the trip to the busy city.

4 Christmas is **the most wonderful** time of the year!

5 The elephant we saw at the zoo was **bigger** than the hippo.

6 My older brother is **worse** at cooking than my mother.

7 That famous hotel will be **the most expensive** place to stay in London.

8 Our last holiday was **better** than the holiday we took two years ago.

9 The blue whale is **the heaviest** animal in the entire ocean.

10 I am growing fast! I will be **taller** than my father next year.

11 The tortoise is **slower** than the rabbit.

12 My little sister is **the youngest** person in our family.

13 Traveling by airplane is **faster** than traveling by car.

14 Summer vacation is **the longest** holiday we have for the whole year.

15 A dolphin is **more intelligent** than a shark.

16 My grandmother makes **the most delicious** cakes in the world.

17 I think Paris is **more beautiful** than many other cities in Europe.

18 New Year's Eve is **the noisiest** night of the year because of the fireworks!

19 The giraffe has **the longest** neck of all land animals.

20 A wild tiger is **more dangerous** than a domestic cat.

REFERENCES

Alcott, L. M. (1868). *Little women*. Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/514

Anders, C. J. (2016). *All the birds in the sky*. Tor Books.

Austen, J. (1811). *Sense and sensibility*. Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/161

Austen, J. (1813). *Pride and prejudice*. Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1342

Austen, J. (1817). *Persuasion*. Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/105

Brontë, C. (1847). *Jane Eyre*. Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1260

Carroll, L. (1865). *Alice's adventures in wonderland*. Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/11

Chambers, B. (2021). *A psalm for the wild-built*. Tordotcom.

Cho, Z. (2015). *Sorcerer to the crown*. Ace Books.

Dickens, C. (1861). *Great expectations*. Project Gutenberg.

https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1400

Dumas, A. (1844). *The count of Monte Cristo*. Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1184

Durrell, G. (1956). *My family and other animals*. Rupert Hart-Davis.

Fitzgerald, F. S. (1925). *The great Gatsby*. Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/64317

Hawthorne, N. (1850). *The scarlet letter*. Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/25344

Homer. (n.d.). *The odyssey* (S. Butler, Trans.). Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/1727

Hugo, V. (1862). *Les misérables* (I. F. Hapgood, Trans.). Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/135

Jones, D. W. (1986). *Howl's moving castle*. Greenwillow Books.

Le Guin, U. K. (1971). *The lathe of heaven*. Charles Scribner's Sons.

Le Guin, U. K. (1974). *The dispossessed*. Harper & Row.

Lee, H. (1960). *To kill a mockingbird*. J. B. Lippincott.

Matthews, M. (2019). *The work of art*. Perfectly Proper Press.

Melville, H. (1851). *Moby-Dick*. Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2701

Orwell, G. (1949). *1984*. Secker & Warburg.

Salinger, J. D. (1951). *The catcher in the rye*. Little, Brown and Company.

Shelley, M. (1818). *Frankenstein*. Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/84

Starhawk. (1993). *The fifth sacred thing*. Bantam Books.

Stoker, B. (1897). *Dracula*. Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/345

Tolstoy, L. (1869). *War and peace* (L. Maude & A. Maude, Trans.). Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/2600

Wilde, O. (1890). *The picture of Dorian Gray*. Project Gutenberg. https://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/174

Willis, C. (1997). *To say nothing of the dog*. Bantam Books.

Reading makes perfect short summaries for pre-intermediate learners A2 CEFR, se publicó en el mes de noviembre de 2026.

ISBN: 978-9907-802-87-0

Grupo Editorial BLR
Ecuador
Cel: +593 98 320 4362
https://grupoblr.com/
publicaciones@grupoblr.com

BIOGRAFÍA DE AUTORES

Jorge Fernando Checa Medina:
Jorge Checa Medina is an experienced educator with over 20 years of teaching experience. Passionate about innovation, he constantly seeks to create dynamic and productive learning environments that inspire both students and colleagues. Throughout his career, he has worked as a teacher, researcher and coordinator at the top public and private Ecuadorian universities, shaping academic excellence through his commitment to transformative education.

Javier Bermeo Pacheco:
Javier Bermeo Pacheco is a recognized leader in the university sector, with a solid and extensive career spanning years as a professor, director of the continuing education center, and currently, as the dean of the Faculty of Business Sciences at Universidad Técnica de Machala. His constant pursuit of excellence in both his role as an educator and an educational administrator has positioned him as a key professional in the training of new generations and in institutional development.

Manuel López Feijoo:
Manuel Feijoo is an educator and educational administrator with extensive experience in the university field, standing out for his dynamism and proactivity. With years of experience in teaching and as the director of the continuing education center at Universidad Técnica de Machala, he has successfully led the training of professionals, with a particular focus on teaching English to the students of this prestigious university.

READING MAKES PERFECT SHORT SUMMARIES FOR PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS A2 CEFR

Learning English is not a difficult task when students are given the right tools. With that in mind, we developed this textbook, Reading Makes Perfect: Short Summaries for Pre-Intermediate Learners, to help you improve your English in a fun and engaging way.

This book contains 30 summaries of popular stories from around the world, covering a wide range of topics and genres. Each summary has been carefully adapted to the A2 Pre-Intermediate level of the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEFR).

In addition, every story is accompanied by a set of reading comprehension questions. You will also find a grammar reference section to review verb tenses and essential language structures, along with exercises to practice each point. An answer key for all exercises is provided at the end of the book.

Happy Reading!

GRUPO BLR

Grupo Editorial BLR
Ecuador
Cel: +593 98 320 4362
https://grupoblr.com/
publicaciones@grupoblr.com

ISBN: 978-9907-802-87-0

UNIVERSIDAD TÉCNICA DE MACHALA
1969